

Over  
600 Entries

# HANDBOOK OF Japanese Grammar

TUTTLE LANGUAGE LIBRARY

- All the essential grammatical elements
- Complete explanations and sample usage
- Alphabetized for quick reference

Masahiro Tanimori

**An easy-to-understand, compact guide to Japanese grammar,** this handy book alphabetically introduces the most essential grammatical function words from *ageru* to *zenzen*. Each entry is clearly explained in layman's terms, and all possible usage is illustrated in helpful sample sentences. Ideal for Japanese-language students at all levels, it teaches basics to the beginner and serves as an excellent reference for advanced students. Learners will benefit from studying the book on their own from cover to cover, as well as by keeping it on their desk to use as a supplement to classroom study.

**Masahiro Tanimori** graduated from Kobe University in 1981 and is currently a graduate student in Japanology at Osaka University. He is a member of the Society for Teaching Japanese as a Foreign Language.

**TUTTLE PUBLISHING**  
Boston • Rutland, Vermont • Tokyo

[www.tuttlepublishing.com](http://www.tuttlepublishing.com)  
Printed in Singapore

US \$14.95



6 76251 81940 3

ISBN 0-8048-1940-8



9 780804 819404



5 14 95

Published by Tuttle Publishing,  
an imprint of Periplus Editions (HK) Ltd.

© 1994 by Charles E. Tuttle Co., Inc.  
All rights reserved.  
LCC Card No. 94-60444  
ISBN 0-8048-1940-8

First edition, 1994  
Sixth printing, 2003

Printed in Singapore

#### DISTRIBUTION

*North America, Latin America & Europe*  
Tuttle Publishing  
Airport Industrial Park  
364 Innovation Drive  
North Clarendon, VT 05759-9436  
Tel: (802) 773 8930; Fax: (802) 773 6993  
Email: [info@tuttlepublishing.com](mailto:info@tuttlepublishing.com)

*Japan*  
Tuttle Publishing  
Yaekari Building, 3rd Floor  
5-4-12 Osaki, Shinagawa-ku  
Tokyo 141-0032  
Tel: (03) 5437 0171; Fax: (03) 5437 0755  
Email: [tuttle-sales@gol.com](mailto:tuttle-sales@gol.com)

*Asia Pacific*  
Berkeley Books Pte. Ltd.  
130 Joo Seng Road, #06-01/03  
Singapore 368357  
Tel: (65) 6280 1330; Fax: (65) 6280 6290  
Email: [inquiries@periplus.com.sg](mailto:inquiries@periplus.com.sg)

# Contents

Introduction 7

Part One : Dictionary of Grammatical Function Words 11

Part Two : Grammatical Explanations 247

Adjectival Nouns 248

Adjectives 252

Adverbs 262

Conjunctions 265

Counters 268

Euphonic Changes 272

Intransitive and Transitive Verbs 274

Nouns 276

Polite Language 278

Prepositions 282

Pronouns 292

Verbs 293





# Introduction

Language learners come with backgrounds and interests as varied as people come in shapes and sizes. To accommodate the burgeoning interest in Japanese-language study is an equal number of books and learning aids for all levels. One resource that anyone can use, no matter what their level of Japanese, is a thorough grammar reference. This one is designed for ease of use by the non-linguist—for the non-native *speaker* and *user* of Japanese rather than the *student* of Japanese.

Grammatical terminology is kept to a minimum, as are detailed explanations as to why words or phrases function as they do. Rather, example sentences show concretely how and where the key function words are used. It is hoped that this method will be immediately accessible (and useful) to a wide audience. Use of this reference book doesn't require extensive prior knowledge of grammatical terms, nor does it demand that the reader learn them, though of course one is not at a disadvantage for having that knowledge. To look up a word one simply need know how to say it—and be grateful that romanization of Japanese is easier than spelling in English.

Part One includes grammatical function words arranged alphabetically, with entries given first in romanized form,

followed by Japanese characters. Each entry includes a brief grammatical description of the word or phrase, and several English equivalents. Below that follow sample sentences illustrating various positions within a sentence where the entry word or phrase may be used. In these sentences, the author treats the progressive (*te iru*) and *tai*-forms of verbs as dictionary forms, as these can be further conjugated.

The sample sentences illustrate a wide variety of everyday situations. While some of the English translations of the Japanese may seem a bit stilted, this has been done deliberately in the interest of clearly illustrating the grammatical pattern at hand. Other related or similar function words are cross-referenced at the end of each entry, and if the reference occurs in Part Two, a “II” in parentheses follows.

While Part One is for looking up specifics, Part Two takes a more traditional approach to grammar, examining parts of speech, their general usage, and conjugations. As such it can be used for further detailed study of a particular part of speech or grammatical usage. *Usage* is a key word throughout this book, as the author has made a concerted effort to show various nuances of particular Japanese forms. He has also included a detailed cross-reference with Part One. Thus if one looks up Verb Forms in Part Two, for example, a list of words and phrases in Part One that are commonly used with each of the verb forms is also provided.

A further word about verb forms is in order. Consistent with the minimal use of grammatical terminology, the author has not used the traditional terminology for verb forms. One will not find a listing for “conditional forms,” for example, but rather the “*ba*-form” and the “*tara*-form.” Once again, the user need only know how to say something in order to learn more about it. It is hoped

that this approach will be found user-friendly. Like any systematic approach, however, one must allow time to become accustomed to it.

One final note in regard to the Prepositions entry in Part Two. While other sections list Japanese first, followed by English equivalents, this section alone lists English prepositions first, following them with example sentences illustrating how these may be expressed in Japanese. As these two, three, and four-letter English words function very differently in Japanese, the exceptional treatment of them here is not only justified but extremely helpful.

It is the author's hope that students using this book will make great progress in their study of the Japanese language. He has made every effort to include both everyday and exceptional usage in the example sentences presented here, for in grammar, there are no rules without exceptions.

Finally, special thanks go to Julie Iezzi and the staff of the Charles E. Tuttle Publishing Company for their hard and patient work in editing the English content.





**PART ONE**

**Dictionary of  
Grammatical Function Words**

## 12 • GRAMMATICAL FUNCTION WORDS

### ageru あげる

VERB MEANING give (something to a person who is either of equal or lower status), do (something for that kind of person)

*Sashiageru* is used with a person of higher status or to whom the speaker wishes to show respect. *Yaru* is very informally used instead of this verb. The 1st person cannot be the recipient.

#### 1. After noun + *o*

この本をあげます。

*Kono hon o agemasu*

I give you this book

(*Kono hon o sashiagemasu* {respectful})

#### 2. After *te*-form of verb

この自転車を貸してあげます。

*Kono jitensha o kashite agemasu*

I lend you this bicycle.

(*Kono jitensha o kashite sashiagemasu* {respectful})

彼女にネックレスを買ってあげました。

*Kanojo ni nekkurevu o katte agemashita*

I bought a necklace for her.

▶ See also *kureru*, *morau*

### aida あいだ

NOUN MEANING in between, between, during, from      through,  
among, while

#### 1. Followed by *ni*

間に立ってください。

*Aida ni tatte kudasai.*

Please stand in between.

2. After noun + *no*, followed by *ni*

留守の間に田中さんが訪ねてきました。

*Rusu no aida ni tanaka san ga tazunete kimashita*

Mr. Tanaka came to see you during your absence

3. After noun + *to* + noun + *no*, followed by *ni*

郵便局は駅と学校の間にあります

*Yubinkyoku wa eki to gakko no aida ni arimasu*

The post office is between the station and the school

4. After noun + *kara* + noun + *made no*

10日から15日までの間休みます

*Tōka kara jū go nichi made no aida yasumimasu*

I'll take holidays from the 10th through the 15th

5. After verb in the progressive tense, followed by *ni*

本を読んでいる間に眠ってしまった

*Hon o yonde iru aida ni nemutte shumatta*

I fell asleep while I was reading a book

6. After dictionary form of adjective, followed by *ni*

若い間にもっと勉強しなさい。

*Wakai aida ni motto benkyō shimasai*

Study more while you are young

## **amari** あまり

ADVERB (used with a negative) MEANING: not much, not many, not enough, not well, not very

1. Used with negative verb

私はあまり食べません。



## 14 • GRAMMATICAL FUNCTION WORDS

*Watashi wa amari tabemasen*

I don't eat much

彼のことはあまり知りません。

*Kare no koto wa amari shirimasen*

I don't know much about him

今あまりお金を持っていません。

*Ima amari o-kane o motte imasen*

I don't have much money now

### 2 Used with negative adjective

天気はあまりよくありません。

*Tenki wa amari yoku arimasen.*

The weather is not very good

会社は家からあまり遠くありません

*Kaisha wa ie kara amari tōku arimasen*

The company is not very far from our house

**are** あれ

DEMONSTRATIVE NOUN MEANING that, those, it

It refers to an object or objects far from both the speaker and the hearer.

The polite form is *achira*, which also means "that person" or "that direction." *Are* becomes *ano* before a noun it modifies. Moreover, it becomes *asoko* when expressing "that place over there."

### 1. Followed by particle

「あれは何ですか。」 「あれは日本のまつりです。」

"*Are wa nan desu ka*" "*Are wa nihon no matsuri desu*"

"What's that?" "It's a Japanese festival."

あちらに着いたら電話を下さい。

*Achira ni tsutara denwa o kudasai*

Please call me when you get there.

「あちらはとなたですか。」「山本さんです。」

"*Achira wa donata desu ka*" "*Yamamoto-san desu*"

"Who is that person?" "She is Ms. Yamamoto."

銀行はあの建物の隣です。

*Ginko wa ano tatemono no tonari desu.*

The bank is next to the building over there

(*Are* becomes *ano* when used as an adjective)

トイレはあそこにあります。

*Toire wa asoko ni arimasu.*

The restroom is over there.

(*Are* becomes *asoko* when meaning "that place over there")

私の家はあそこです。

*Watashi no ie wa asoko desu.*

My house is over there.

→ See also *kore*, *sore*

## **arimasen**   ありません

NEGATIVE VERB used for making the negative form of *desu*, *aru*, and adjectives

Note that the plain form is *nai*.

### 1. After (adjectival) noun + *dewa*

これは私のかばんではありません。

*Kore wa watashi no kaban dewa arimasen.*

## 16 • GRAMMATICAL FUNCTION WORDS

This is not my bag

その問題はあまり重要ではありません

*Sono mondai wa amari juyo dewa arimasen*

That problem is not very important

### 2. After *ku*-form of adjective

この機械はどこも悪くありません

*Kono kikai wa doko mo waruku arimasen*

Nothing is wrong with this machine

外は寒くありませんでした。

*Soto wa samuku arimasen deshita*

It wasn't cold outside

• See also *aru*, *deku*, *nai*, *masu*, Verb Forms (11)

## **aru** ある

VERB MEANING: be, there be, exist, have

### 1. After inanimate subject

銀行は駅の向こうにあります。

*Ginko wa eki no muko ni arimasu*

The bank is on the other side of the station

### 2. After (object) noun + *ga*

「部屋にはシャワ かありますか 」、はい、あります」

*"Heya ni wa shawa ga arimasu ka" "Hai, arimasu"*

"Does the room have a shower?" "Yes, it does."

### 3. After *ta*-form of verb + *koto* + *ga*

(used for expressing experiences)

東京に3回行ったことがあります。

*Tokyo ni san kai itta koto ga arimasu*

I've been to Tokyo three times.

4. After *te*-form of verb

(used for expressing some continuing state caused by an action)

ドアは閉めてあります。

*Doa wa shimete arimasu*

The door is shut (because I shut it)

▶ See also *arimassen, iru, koto ga aru, nai*

**ato de** あとで

PHRASE MEANING: after, later

1. After noun + *no*

いつも食事の後にコーヒーを飲みます。

*Itsumo shokujī no ato de kohī o nomimasu*

I usually drink coffee after meals

2. After *ta*-form of verb

仕事が終わった後に話したいことがあります。

*Shigoto ga owatta ato de hanashitai koto ga arimasu.*

There is something I want to talk to you about after I finish work.

## 3. Used as adverb

後で電話しましょうか。

*Ato de denwa shimasho ka.*

Shall I call you later?

▶ See also *kara, mae*

**au** あう

VERB (added to other verbs) MEANING: each other, reciprocally



## 18 • GRAMMATICAL FUNCTION WORDS

### 1. After conjunctive form of verb

助けあうことが大切です。

*Tasukeau koto ga taisetsu desu*

It is important to help each other

その問題について話しあえば解決できるといいます。

*Sono mondai ni tsuite hanashiaeba kaiketsu dekiru to omoimasu*

If you talk with each other about the problem, I think you can solve it

## ba ば

PARTICLE MEANING: if, when

Note that *da* is irregular, becoming *naraba*. See Verb Forms and Adjective Forms (11) for details about conjugation

### 1. Used in *ba*-form of verb

あそこに行けば、山田さん、会えます

*Asoko ni ikeba Yamada-san ni aemasu*

If you go over there, you can see Mr Yamada

もっと早く来ればよかった。

*Motto hayaku kureba yokatta*

If I had come much earlier, it would have been better (I should have come much earlier)

彼女が来れば教えてください。

*Kanojo ga kureba oshiete kudasai*

When she comes, please tell me.

(for a future condition, [no] *nara* is used instead of *ba* after dictionary form of verb)

東京に行くのなら新幹線がいいですよ。

*Tokyo ni iku no nara shinkansen ga ii desu yo*

If you're going to Tokyo, you should take the shinkansen

2. After (adjectival) noun + *nara* (conditional form of *da*)

あした雨ならば行きません。

*Ashita ame naraba ikimasen.*

I won't go if it is rainy tomorrow

3. Used in *ba*-form of adjective

よろしければどうぞ食べてください。

*Yoroshikereba dozo tabete kudasai*

If it is all right (If you feel like it), please eat

- ▶ See also *nara*, *tara*, *to*, *to sureba*, Adjective Forms (II), Verb Forms (II)

## ba ... hodo    ば ... ほど

PHRASE MEANING: the more ... the more ...

It follows the stem of *ba*-form of verb/adjective. The dictionary form of the same verb/adjective is repeated before *hodo*.

1. Used with verb

練習すればするほどうまくなります。

*Renshu sureba suru hodo umaku narimasu*

The more you practice, the better you can do

2. Used with adjective

早ければ早いほどいい。

*Hayakereba hayai hodo ii.*

The sooner, the better.

- ▶ See also *dake*

## 20 • GRAMMATICAL FUNCTION WORDS

### **bakari** ばかり

PARTICLE MEANING only, just, always, be ready to (do), have just (done), about

- 1 After *te*-form of verb, followed by *iru/imasu*

彼は遊んでばかりいる。

*Kare wa asonde bakari iru*

He is always playing

- 2 After dictionary form of verb, followed by *da/desu*

彼はいつも食べるばかりです。

*Kare wa usumo taberu bakari desu.*

He is always ready to eat

- 3 After *ta* form of verb, followed by *da/desu*

今ここに着いたばかりです。

*Ima koko ni tsuita bakari desu.*

I've just arrived here

4. After noun

彼は勉強ばかりしている。

*Kare wa benkyō bakari shite iru*

He is always studying.

5. After particle

彼女は図書館にばかり行きます

*Kanojo wa toshokan ni bakari ikimasu*

She always goes to the library.

6. After noun expressing length/quantity

1週間ばかり留守にします。

*Isshukan bakari ruwa ni shimasu*

I'll be away about a week.

1か月で2キロばかり体重が増えました。

*Ikkagetsu de ni kiro bakari taiju ga fuemashita*

I gained about two kilograms in one month

→ See also *dake*

# **beki desu** べきです

PREDICATIVE PHRASE MEANING\* should, ought to (do)

## 1. After dictionary form of verb

一生けんめい働くべきです。

*Isshokenmei hataraku beki desu*

You should work hard

そんなものを買うべきではない。

*Sonna mono o kau beki dewa nai.*

You shouldn't buy such a thing

もっと早く来るべきでした。

*Motto hayaku kuru beki deshita.*

I should have come much earlier

あなたはもっと勉強す(る)べきです

*Anata wa motto benkyo su(ru) beki desu*

You should study more.

(*suru + beki* may be abbreviated to *subeki*)

## 2. Used as adjective

それは注目すべき点が

*Sore wa chumoku subeki ten da*

That's the point you should pay attention to

(dictionary form of verb + *beki* directly precedes the noun and *da/desu* follows)

→ See also *nakereba naranai*



## 22 • GRAMMATICAL FUNCTION WORDS

### **bun** 分

NOUN INDICATING a quantity, part, portion, degree

1. After dictionary form of verb

食べる分はあります。

*Taberu bun wa arimasu*

There is enough to eat

2. After *ta*-form of verb

すでに書いた分を見せてください

*Suden ni kaita bun o misete kudasai*

Please show me the part that you've already written

残った分は取っておきます。

*Nokotta bun wa totte okimasu.*

I'll keep the portion that is left

3. After *nai*-form of verb

要らない分は返しておいて下さい

*Iranai bun wa kaeshite oite kudasai*

Please return the portion you don't need

4. After possessive particle *no*

これは私の分です。

*Kore wa watashi no bun desu*

This is my share.

### **cha** ちゃ

INFORMAL EQUIVALENT of *te wa* or *tara* (usually used by women)

MEANING: if, when

It is used after the stem of *te*-form of verbs whose dictionary form ends with *u*, *ku*, *tsu*, or *ru*. It becomes *ja* (the informal

version of *dewa*) after the stem of *te*-form of verbs whose dictionary form ends with *-bu*, *-gu*, *-mu*, or *-nu*

1. After the stem of *te*-form of verb

そこへ行っちゃいけません。

*Soko e itcha ikemasen*

You must not go there.

そんなことをされちゃ困ります。

*Sonna koto o sarecha komarimasu.*

I'll be distressed if you do that

- ▶ See also *ikenai*, *ja*, *naranai*, *taru*

## chau ちゃう

INFORMAL EQUIVALENT of *te shimau* (usually used by women) meaning: be going to (do), finish (doing), (do something) completely

It is used after the stem of *te*-form of verbs whose dictionary form ends with *-u*, *-ku*, *-su*, or *-ru*. It becomes *jau* (the informal version of *de shimau*) after the stem of *te*-form of verbs whose dictionary form ends with *-bu*, *-gu*, *-mu*, or *-nu*. It is sometimes followed by *no* when forming a question. The past forms are *chatta/jatta* (plain) and *chaimashita/jaimashita* (polite)

1. After the stem of *te*-form of verb

もう帰っちゃうんですか。

*Mō kaetchau n desu ka.*

Are you going to leave so soon?

今日はどんどん飲んじゃいます。

*Kyō wa dondon nonjaimasu.*

## 24 • GRAMMATICAL FUNCTION WORDS

I'm going to drink like crazy today

彼女に悪いことをしちゃいました。

*Kanojo ni warui koto o shichaimashita.*

I've done wrong to her.

▶ See also *te shimau*

### **chittomo** ちっとも

ADVERB (used with a negative) MEANING (not) at all, (not) a bit

#### 1. Followed by negative verb

ちっともかまいません。

*Chittomo kamaimasen*

I don't mind at all.

(affirmative sentences use *sukoshi*)

すこし日本語が話せます。

*Sukoshi nihongo ga hanasemasu*

I can speak a little Japanese.

▶ See also *amari*, *matteku*, *sukoshi*, *zenzen*

### **chodo** ちょうど

ADVERB MEANING (have) just (done), exactly, precisely

#### 1. Used with *ta* form of verb, followed by *tokoro* (or *bakari*) + *da/desu*

ちょうど仕事を終えたところです。

*Chōdo shigoto o oeta tokoro desu*

I've just finished the work.

ちょうど今着いたばかりです。

*Chōdo ima tsuita bakari desu.*

I've just arrived.

2. Before number expression

ちょうど9時に来てください。

*Chodo ku ji ni kite kudasai*

Please come at nine sharp.

**chū ni** 中に

PHRASE (of time) MEANING: during, within

It often euphonically changes to *ju ni*

1. After noun expressing period of time

夏休み中にアメリカに行くつもりです

*Natsu yasumi chū ni amerika ni iku tsumori desu*

I plan to go to America during the summer vacation

今週中に休みをとって過ごすか決めます

*Konshū chū ni yasumi o doko de sugosu ka kimemasu*

I'll decide within this week where to spend the vacation

2、3日中に完成します。

*Ni san nichi ju ni kansei shimasu*

I'll complete it within a few days

→ See also *ju*

**da** だ

→ See *desu*



## 26 • GRAMMATICAL FUNCTION WORDS

### **daga** だが

CONJUNCTION (usually used in written language) MEANING. but, however

#### 1. At the beginning of sentence

戦争は終わった。だが多くの命が失われた。

*Senso wa owatta **Daga** oku no mochi ga ushinawareta*

The war is over. However, many people lost their lives.

#### 2. After dictionary, *ta*-, or *na*-form of verb/adjective + *no/n*

この商品は安いのだが品質が良くない。

*Kono shohin wa yasui **no daga** hinshitsu ga yokunai*

These goods are cheap but the quality is not good.

彼のうちを訪ねたのだが、会えなかった。

*Kare no uchi o tazuneta **no daga**, aenakatta.*

I dropped in at his house but I wasn't able to see him.

高いんたが買わなければならない。

*Takai **n daga** kawanakereba naranai*

It's expensive but I need to buy it.

面白くなかったのだが最後まで見た。

*Omoshiroku nakatta **n daga** saigo made mita*

Although it wasn't interesting, I watched it to the end.

#### 3. After (adjectival) noun + *na* + *no/n*

彼は誠実なのだが能力が足りない。

*Kare wa seijitsu **na no daga** noriyoku ga tarinai*

He is sincere but lacks the ability.

▶ See also *dakedo*, *ga* (2), *keredo*(*mo*)

### **dakara** だから

CONJUNCTION MEANING so, and so, that's why, therefore, because

## 1. At the beginning of sentence

「事故があったそうですね。」「ええ、だから遅れました。」

"Jiko ga atta so desu ne." "Ee, **dakara** okuremashita "

"I hear there was an accident " "Yes, that's why I was late "

2 After dictionary, *ta* , or *nai* form of verb/adjective + *no/n*

あしたは早く起きるんだからもう寝なさい

*Ashita wa hayaku okiru n dakara mo nenasai.*

Go to bed now because you have to get up early tomorrow.

お父さんはもう行ったんだからあなたも早く行きなさい。

*Otosan wa mo itta n dakara anata mo hayaku ikinasai*

Your father has already gone so you should hurry and go too.

3. After (adjectival) noun + *na* + *no/n*

あなたは学生なんだからもっと勉強しなくてははいけません。

*Anata wa gakusei na n dakara motto benkyo shinakute wa ikemasen.*

Because you are a student you have to study more

→ See also *kara*

**dake** だけ

PARTICLE MEANING: only, just, simply, as much as, as . . . as

## 1. After noun

あなただけを愛しています。

*Anata dake o ai shite imasu.*

I love only you.

それができるのは太郎だけです。

*Sore ga dekiru no wa tarō dake desu.*

28 • GRAMMATICAL FUNCTION WORDS

Taro is the only one who can do it.

2. After particle

あなたとだけ話したい。

*Anata to dake hanashitai*

I want to talk just with you (alone)

その動物は沖縄にだけいます。

*Sono dobutsu wa okinawa ni dake imasu*

That animal exists only in Okinawa

3 After dictionary form of verb/adjective, followed by *da/desu*

彼は眠っているだけです。

*Kare wa nemutte iru dake desu.*

He is only sleeping

これは高い/ けです あまりよくありません

*Kore wa takai dake desu Amari yoku arimasen*

This is just expensive It's not so good

4. After *ta*-form of verb/adjective, followed by *da/desu*

これを見に来ただけです。

*Kore o mi ni kita dake desu.*

I just came here to see this.

少し眠かっただけです。

*Sukoshi nemukatta dake desu.*

I was just a little sleepy.

5 After *nai* form of verb/adjective, followed by *da/desu*

彼とはあまり話をしないだけです

*Kare to wa amari hanashi o shinai dake desu*

I simply don't talk with him so often

行きたくないだけです。

*Ikitakunai dake desu*

I just don't want to go.

6. After adjectival noun + *na*

彼は有名なだけで人した政治家ではありません

*Kare wa yūmei-na dake de taishita seijika dewa arimasen*

He is merely famous, and not much of a politician

7. In idiomatic expressions

(between *dekiru* and adverb)

あすまたできるだけ早くここに来てください

*Asu mata dekiru dake hayaku koko ni kite kudasai*

Please come here again tomorrow as soon as you can

(after *suki-na* or *hoshii*)

好きなだけ食べてください。

*Suki-na dake tabete kudasai*

Please eat as much as you like.

8. Used instead of *hodo* in the pattern      *ba*      *hodo*

努力すればするだけうまくなります

*Doryoku sureba suru dake umaku narimasu*

The harder you try, the better you can do it

9. Used in the pattern      *dake de naku*,      *mo*

彼女は日本語だけでなくフランス語も話せます

*Kanojo wa nihongo dake de naku furansugo mo hanawemasu*

She can speak not only Japanese but also French

▶ See also *ba*,      *hodo*, *kagiri*, *shika*

**dakedo**      だけど

INFORMAL CONJUNCTION OR ADVERB MEANING but, however, though, still, nevertheless

1. At the beginning of sentence

あの車がとてもほしい      だけど高すぎる

*Ano kuruma ga totemo hoshii      Dakedo takasugiru*

30 • GRAMMATICAL FUNCTION WORDS

I want that car very much. However, it is too expensive for me.

だけどそんなことはしなければよかった

**Dakedo** sonna koto wa shinakereba yokatta

I wish I hadn't done such a thing, though

彼は親切です。だけどあまり好きではありません。

**Kare wa shinsetsu desu. Dakedo** amari suki dewa arimasen

He is kind. Still, I don't like him very much.

2. After (adjectival) noun

今日は雨だけど出かけますか

**Kyo wa ame dakedo** dekakemasu ka.

Will you go out though it is rainy today?

3 After dictionary form of verb/adjective + *no/n*

すもうを見たいんですが、どこで切符を買ったらいいのかわかりません。

**Sumo o mitai n dakedo** doko de kippu o kattara ii no ka wakarimasen.

I want to see sumo wrestling, but I don't know where I can buy a ticket.

4. After *ta*-form of verb/adjective + *no/n*

ワープロを買ったんだけど使うのがむずかしいです

**Wāpuro o katta n dakedo** tsukau no ga muzukashii desu.

I bought a word processor, but it is difficult to use.

高かったんですけどどうしても欲しかったのです

**Takakatta n dakedo** doshitemo hoshikatta no desu

It was expensive, but I really wanted it

→ See also *daga*, *ga* (2), *keredo(mo)*

**dare** だれ

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN MEANING: who

The subject indicator *wa* cannot be used after *dare*

1. Used in subjective case with *ga*

だれが勝つと思いますか。

*Dare ga katsu to omoimasu ka.*

Who do you think will win?

だれがこれを壊したのか知っていますか

*Dare ga kore o kowashita no ka shitte imasu ka.*

Do you know who broke this?

2. Used in objective case with *o/ni*

だれをさがしているんですか。

*Dare o sagashite iru n desu ka.*

Who are you looking for?

だれに会いたいのですか。

*Dare ni aitai no desu ka*

Who do you want to see?

3. Used as complement that describes subject

あそこに立っている人はだれですか

*Asoko ni tatte iru hito wa dare desu ka.*

Who is the person standing over there?

4. Used in possessive case with *no*

あれはだれの車ですか。

*Are wa dare no kuruma desu ka*

Whose car is that?

これはだれのかばんかわかりますか。

*Kore wa dare no kaban ka wakarimasu ka.*

Do you know whose bag this is?

5. Used with specific particle

(*dare + ka*: someone, anyone)

だれかがいるみたいです。

32 • GRAMMATICAL FUNCTION WORDS

**Dareka ga iru mitai desu.**

Someone seems to be there.

(*dare + mo* [used with a negative] no one, nobody)

だれも電話に出ません。

**Daremo denwa ni demasen.**

Nobody answers the phone.

(*dare + demo* anybody, everybody)

たれどもこの機械を操作できます

**Daredemo kono kikai o yosa dekimasu**

Anybody can operate this machine

**darô** だろう

→ See *desho*

**dasu** だす

VERB MEANING: abruptly begin (doing something), (do something) and take out, (do something) and go out

1. After conjunctive form of verb

彼はたばこを吸いだした。

**Kare wa tabako o suidashita**

He began to smoke.

このカードでこの銀行からお金を引き出すことができます。

**Kono kado de kono ginko kara o kane o hikidasu koto ga dekimasu.**

With this card you can withdraw money from this bank.

私はよく授業を抜け出した。



*Watashi wa yoku jugyo o nukedashita.*

I would often skip out of classes.

→ See also *hajimeru*

## datte だって

INFORMAL PARTICLE OR CONJUNCTION (usually used by women and children) MEANING but, because, also, even

### 1. At the beginning of sentence

(in answer to a question)

「行きたくないの。」「だって疲れているんだもの。」

"*Ititakunai no?*" "*Datte tsukarete iru n da mono.*"

"You don't want to go?" "Because I'm tired"

(in reply to an imperative)

「もう寝る時間ですよ。」「だって眠くないんだもの。」

"*Mo neru jikan desu yo.*" "*Datte nemuku nai n da mono*"

"It's time you went to bed." "But I'm not sleepy"

### 2. After noun

金持ちだって不幸な時もある。

*Kanemochi datte fuko-na toki mo aru*

Even rich people are unhappy sometimes

「あんなことはいやだ。」「私だっていやだ。」

"*Anna koto wa iya da.*" "*Watashi datte iya da*"

"I hate such things." "I do, too"

### 3. Used with interrogative pronoun

(*dare*, *nan*, and *doko* + *datte* mean every body, everything, and everywhere respectively)

だれだってそれには怒ります。

*Dare datte sore ni wa okorimasu.*

### 34 • GRAMMATICAL FUNCTION WORDS

Everybody gets angry at that.

彼はスポーツならなんだってできます。

*Kare wa supotsu nara nan datte dekimasu.*

If it's sports, he can play everything.

→ See also *demo*

### de で

PARTICLE MEANING at, in, on, by, with, from, because of, for

Be careful not to confuse this with the conjunctive form *de* of the copula *da*.

1. After noun expressing place where an action is performed  
(takes the particle *o*)

私は毎日学校で英語を勉強します。

*Watashi wa mainichi gakkō de eigo o benkyō shimasu.*

I study English at school every day

彼は部屋でテレビを見ています。

*Kare wa heya de terebi o mite imasu.*

He is watching television in his room

2. After noun expressing place where an event is or where an action occurs

(takes the particle *ga*)

彼女の家でパーティーがあります。

*Kanojo no ie de party ga arimasu.*

There will be a party at her house

屋根で何か音がする。

*Yane de nanika oto ga suru*

I hear a sound on the roof.

3. After noun expressing range for comparison

ポールはクラスで一番背が高い。

*Pōru wa kurasu de ichiban se ga takai.*

Paul is the tallest in the class.

- 4 After noun expressing method or means

私は電車で仕事に行きます。

*Watashi wa densha de shigoto ni ikimasu*

I go to work by train.

そのニュースはきのうの新聞で読みました。

*Sono nyusu wa kinō no shinbun de yomimashita.*

I read the news in yesterday's newspaper.

名前はインクで書いてください。

*Namae wa inku de kaite kudasai*

Please write your name in ink

5. After noun expressing material or ingredients

酒は米で作られる。

*Sake wa kome de tsukurareru.*

Sake is made from rice.

6. After noun expressing reason or cause

佐藤さんは風で休んでいます。

*Sato-san wa kaze de yasunde imasu.*

Mr. Sato is absent with a cold

彼女のお父さんはがんで亡くなりました。

*Kanojo no otosan wa gan de nakunarimashita.*

Her father died of cancer.

あなたのおかげでうまくいきました。

*Anata no okage de umaku ikimashita.*

It went smoothly thanks to you.

7. After noun expressing how an action is performed

新幹線は時速200キロ以上のスピードで走る。

### 36 • GRAMMATICAL FUNCTION WORDS

*Shinkansen wa jisoku ni hyakkiro ijo no supiido de hashiru*

The shinkansen runs at speeds of more than 200 kilometers per hour.

- 8 After noun expressing time taken to finish an action

1時間で帰ります。

*Ichijikan de kaerimasu.*

I'll be home in an hour

- 9 After noun expressing point in time when something terminates

休みは明日で終わります。

*Yasumi wa asu de owarimasu*

The vacation will be over tomorrow

10. After noun expressing price

この時計は5千円で買いました。

*Kono tokei wa gosen en de kaimashita.*

I bought this watch for five thousand yen

11. After noun expressing age

私は25才で結婚したい。

*Watashi wa ni jū go sui de kekkon shitai.*

I want to marry at the age of twenty five

- 12 After noun expressing quantity

このトマトは4個で200円しました

*Kono tomato wa yon ko de ni hyaku en shumashita*

These tomatoes cost two hundred yen for four

→ See also *desu, dewa (1), kara, ni*

**de aru** である

PREDICATIVE PHRASE USED IN WRITTEN OR FORMAL LANGUAGE INSTEAD OF *da/desu* TO EXPLICITLY AFFIRM THE PRECEDING STATEMENT

## 1. After (adjectival) noun

金閣寺は14世紀に建てられた寺である。

*Kinkakuji wa ju yon seiki ni taterareta tera de aru*

Kinkakuji is a temple built in the fourteenth century

2. After dictionary form of verb/adjective + *no*

こうすれば問題は解決されるのである。

*Ko sureba mondai wa kaiketsu sareru no de aru.*

The problem will be solved in this way.

結局彼のいうことが正しいのである。

*Kekkyoku kare no iu koto ga tadashii no de aru.*

After all what he says is correct.

→ See also *desu, no desu*

**dekiru** できる

VERB MEANING can perform something, can be done, be finished, be ready, be made, be born, become pregnant, be formed, be good (at), come into existence

1. After (object) noun + *ga*

「車の運転ができますか」「はい、できます」

*"Kuruma no unten ga dekimasu ka" "Hai, dekimasu"*

"Can you drive a car?" "Yes, I can"

マイクは日本語がよくできます。

*Maiku wa nihongo ga yoku dekimasu.*

Mike is very good at Japanese

## 2. Used as intransitive verb

仕事ことができました。

*Shigoto ga dekimashita*

The work is finished.

38 • GRAMMATICAL FUNCTION WORDS

食事の用意ができました。

*Shokuji no yoi ga dekimashita.*

Preparation for dinner is finished. (Dinner is ready )

みそは大豆からできます。

*Miso wa daizu kara dekimasu.*

Miso is made from soybeans.

彼女に子供ができた。

*Kanojo ni kodomo ga dekita*

A child was born to her. (or She is going to have a baby )

駅前に新しいビルができた。

*Ekimae ni atarashii biru ga dekita.*

A new building has been built in front of the station.

急用ができたので失礼します。

*Kvuyō ga dekita node shitsurei shimasu*

Some urgent business has come up so I have to leave.

おもしろいクラブができました。

*Omoshiroi kurabu ga dekimashita.*

A unique club was set up.

→ See also *ga, koto ga dekiru*

**demo** でも

PARTICLE OR CONJUNCTION MEANING but, or something, even, in spite of, any . . .

1 At the beginning of sentence

でももう遅すぎるよ。

*Demo mō ososugiru yo.*

But it's too late now.

2. After interrogative word

だれでもそんなことは知っています。

*Dare demo sonna koto wa shitte imasu.*

Anybody knows such things. (Anybody knows that.)

食べ物は何でも食べます。

*Tabemono wa nan demo tabemasu.*

I eat any (kind of) food.

いつでもけっこうです。

*Itsu demo kekkō desu*

Any time will be fine.

どこでも仕事に行きます。

*Doko demo shigoto ni ikimasu*

I will go anywhere to work.

どうでもいいです。

*Dō demo ii desu.*

Any way is all right. (I don't care.)

### 3. After (adjectival) noun

コーヒーでも飲みたいな。

*Kōhī demo nomitai na.*

I'd like to drink coffee or something

大人でもその漢字を知らない人がいます。

*Otona demo sono kanji o shiranai hito ga imasu.*

There are even some grown-ups who don't know that kanji.

彼は日曜日でも働きます。

*Kare wa nichiyobi demo hatarakimasu*

He works even on Sundays.

雨でも出発します。

*Ame demo shuppatsu shimasu.*

I'm going to leave even if it is rainy

### 4. After specific particle

東京からでも富士山が見えます



*Tokyo kara demo fuji-san ga miemasu*

Even from Tokyo Mt. Fuji can be seen

→ See also *datte, ikura . . . temo/demo*

## deshō でしょう

AUXILIARY VERB MEANING will (be), shall (be), would (be), probably

### 1. After noun

あの人がホワイトさんでしょう。

*Ano hito ga howaito-san deshō*

That man is probably Mr White

東京はあす雨でしょう。

*Tokyō wa asu ame deshō*

It may be rainy in Tokyo tomorrow

### 2. After dictionary form of verb/adjective

ポールは5時までに帰るでしょう。

*Poru wa go ji made ni kaeru deshō.*

Paul will be probably be back by five

あなたもいっしょに行きましょう (with rising intonation)

*Anata mo isshoni iku desho*

You will go together, won't you?

彼女はとてもきれいでしょ (with rising intonation)

*Kanojo wa totemo kirei deshō*

She is very beautiful, isn't she?

### 3. After *nai*-form of verb/adjective

その仕事は土曜日までにできないでしょう。

*Sono shigoto wa doyōbi made ni dekinai desho*

The work will probably not be completed by Saturday

→ See also *desu*

**desu** です

POLITE AUXILIARY VERB (similar to "be" in English) INDICATING someone or something equals something else, someone or something is in some state or condition; someone or something has some quality, someone or something is in some place or position, something is at some time

## 1. After (adjectival) noun

私の名前は佐藤健次です。

*Watashi no namae wa satō kenji desu.*

My name is Kenji Sato.

きのうポールとマイクが欠席でした。

*Kinō poru to maiku ga kesseki deshita.*

Paul and Mike were absent yesterday.

私はその決定にはとても満足です。

*Watashi wa sono kettei ni wa totemo manzoku desu.*

I am very much satisfied with the conclusion

兄は今京都です。

*Ani wa ima kyoto desu.*

My older brother is in Kyoto now

「コンサートは次の日曜日ですか。」「はい、そうです。」

*"Konsato wa tsugi no nichiyōbi desu ka?" "Hai, so desu."*

"Is the concert next Sunday?" "Yes, it is."

彼は日本人ではありません。

*Kare wa nihonjin dewa arimasen*

He is not Japanese.

## 2. After dictionary form of adjective

(*desu* at the end of the sentence makes it polite)

彼のかいた絵はとてもすばらしいです。

*Kare no kaita e wa totemo subarashii desu.*

## 42 • GRAMMATICAL FUNCTION WORDS

The pictures he drew are very wonderful.

➤ See also *arimasen, de aru, deshō, no desu*

### **dewa** では (1)

DOUBLE PARTICLE (made up of *de* and *wa*) MEANING, in, at, as for, judging from, by

Used in the same manner as *de*, the addition of *wa* serves to stress the preceding word.

#### 1. After noun

東京では物価が高すぎます。

*Tōkyō dewa bukka ga takasugimasu*

In Tokyo prices are too high.

数学では彼はほかのクラスメートよりも優秀です。

*Sugaku dewa kare wa hoka no kurasumeto yori mo yushū desu.*

In mathematics he is superior to all his classmates.

私の意見ではこちらの方がいいと思います。

*Watashi no iken dewa kochira no hō ga ii to omoimasu.*

In my opinion, I think this is better.

あの様子では彼は来そうもない。

*Ano yōsu dewa kare wa kiso mo nai*

Judging from the looks of things, it doesn't seem he'll come.

私の時計では1時15分です。

*Watashi no tokei dewa ichi ji jū go fun desu.*

It is one fifteen by my watch.

➤ See also *arimasen, de, ja*

**dewa** では (2)

CONJUNCTION MEANING 'well, then, so, well then, if so'

1. At the beginning of sentence

ではこれで失礼します。

*Dewa kore de shitsurei shimasu.*

Well, I must be leaving now.

ではなぜそうしたんですか。

*Dewa naze sō shita n desu ka.*

Then, why did you do it?

ではもうあきらめます。

*Dewa mō akiramemasu.*

If so, I give up.

**dō** どう

INTERROGATIVE ADVERB MEANING 'how, what, how about'

1. Followed by verb +
- no/n*

(may be replaced with the phrase *dō yatte* or *dono yō ni shite*)

それはどうするんですか。

*Sore wa dō suru n desu ka.*

How shall I do it?

駅までどう行くんですか。

*Eki made dō iku n desu ka.*

How can I go to the station?

2. Followed by
- desu*

(may be replaced by the more polite word *ikaga*)

今日は気分はどうですか。

#### 44 • GRAMMATICAL FUNCTION WORDS

*Kyō wa kibun wa dō desu ka.*

How are you feeling today?

コーヒーでも1杯どうですか。

*Kohu demo ippai dō desu ka.*

How about a cup of coffee (or something)?

京都旅行はどうでしたか。

*Kyoto ryoko wa dō deshita ka*

How did you like your trip to Kyoto?

それをやってみたらどうですか。

*Sore o yatte mitara dō desu ka*

How would it be if you try it? (Why don't you try it?)

#### 3. Used with the verb *omou*

この絵をどう思いますか。

*Kono e o dō omoimasu ka.*

What do you think of this picture?

→ See also *dōshite*

#### **doko** どこ

INTERROGATIVE WORD MEANING where, what

#### 1. Followed by *desu*

「郵便局はどこですか。」「あの銀行の向こうです。」

*“Yubinkyoku wa doko desu ka.” “Ano ginko no muko desu.”*

“Where is the post office?” “It’s on the other side of that bank.”

「田中さんは今どこですか。」「学校です。」

*“Tanaka-san wa ima doko desu ka.” “Gakko desu.”*

“Where is Mr. Tanaka now?” “He is at school.”

#### 2 Followed by locational particle

彼女はどこに住んでいるんですか

*Kanojo wa doko ni sunde iru n desu ka*

Where is she living?

「休みにはどこへ行くんですか。」「どこにも行きません。」

“*Yasumi ni wa doko e iku n desu ka.*” “*Doko ni mo ikimasen.*”

“Where are you going for the vacation?” “I won’t go anywhere.”

どこで会うんですか。

*Doko de au n desu ka.*

Where shall we meet?

彼女はどこから来ましたか。

*Kanojo wa doko kara kimashita ka.*

Where did she come from? (Where is she from?)

3. Followed by possessive particle *no*

どこのホテルに泊まるんですか。

*Doko no hoteru ni tomaru n desu ka.*

At what hotel are you staying?

4. Followed by subject marker *ga*

そのどこが悪いんですか。

*Sore no doko ga warui n desu ka*

What’s wrong with it?

→ See also *dore*, *itsu*, *ka*, *nani*

**dokoro de(wa) nai**    ところで(は)ない

PHRASE MEANING be out of the question, be more than , this is not an occasion for

1. After dictionary form of verb/adjective

旅行に行くところではない。

*Ryokō ni iku dokoro dewa nai*

Going on a trip is out of the question.

運がいいところではありません。奇跡です。

*Un ga ii dokoro dewa arimasen. Kiseki desu*

It is more than good luck. It is a miracle.

冗談を言っているところでない。

*Jōdan o itte iru dokoro de nai*

This is not an occasion for joking.

## **dokoro ka**    ところか

PHRASE MEANING: far from, to say nothing of, not to speak of, much more, (not) . . . much less, not only . . . but . . . , not . . . on the contrary

### 1. After (adjectival) noun

(the pattern: *dokoro ka . . . mo* emphasizes the second item in comparison with the first)

彼は日本語どころか中国語も話せます。

*Kare wa nihongo dokoro ka chugokugo mo hanasemasu.*

He can speak not only Japanese but Chinese as well.

肉どころか魚も食べません。

*Niku dokoro ka sakana mo tabemasen*

I don't even eat fish much less meat.

ドイツ語どころか英語も私にはむずかしい。

*Doitsugo dokoro ka eigo mo watashi ni wa muzukashii*

English is difficult for me, to say nothing of German

雨どころか雪になりそうです。

*Ame dokoro ka yuki ni nari so desu.*

Rain—it looks more like snow

### 2. After dictionary form of verb/adjective



彼は笑うどころか怒ってしまった。

*Kare wa warau dokoro ka okotte shimatta*

Far from laughing, he got totally angry

彼は賢いどころか天才だ。

*Kare wa kashikoi dokoro ka tensai da.*

He is not only clever but a genius.

3. After *nai*-form of verb

彼は手伝わないどころか文句を言っている。

*Kare wa tetsudawanai dokoro ka monku o itte iru*

Not only does he not help, but he complains.

**dōmo** どうも

INFORMAL WORD MEANING. hello, good-bye, thank you, sorry, very (much), somehow, just

1. Used in greetings

「やあ。」「やあ、どうも。」

"Yā," "Yā, *dōmo*."

"Hi" "Hi, how are you?" (Glad to see you)

「これで失礼します。」「どうも。」

"*Kore de shitsurei shimasu*" "*Dōmo*"

"I'm leaving now." "Good-bye."

2. Used to express thanks

「お先にどうぞ。」「これは、どうも。」

"*O-saki ni dōzo*." "*Kore wa dōmo*"

"Please go ahead." (After you.) "Oh, thanks."

3. Used to express apology

「痛い。」「あ、どうも。大丈夫ですか。」

"*Itai*" "*A, dōmo. Dayōbu desu ka.*"

48 • GRAMMATICAL FUNCTION WORDS

“Ouch.” “Oh, sorry. Are you all right?”

(*sumimasen* [I'm sorry] is dropped after *domo*)

4. Used as adverb

遅れてどうもすみません。

*Okurete domo sumimasen.*

I'm very sorry to be late.

ご親切とつもありがとつございます

*Go-shinsetsu domo arigato gozaimasu.*

Thank you very much for your kindness.

5. Used with negative

あなたの言うことがどうもわかりません

*Anata no iu koto ga domo wakarimasen*

I just can't understand what you say.

どうもあの人は気に入らない。

*Domo ano hito wa ki ni iranai*

Somehow I don't like that man

→ See also *doshitemo*

**dono kurai** どのくらい

INTERROGATIVE PHRASE MEANING how many, how much, how long, how far, how tall, how often

1. Before noun

どのくらい切手を集めましたか。

*Dono kurai kitte o atsumemashita ka*

How many stamps have you collected?

2. Used as adverb

ここから駅までどのくらいかかりますか

*Koko kara eki made dono kurai kakarimasu ka*

How long does it take from here to the station?

車はどのくらいかかりますか。

*Kuruma wa dono kurai kakarimasu ka.*

How much does a car cost?/How long does it take by car?

→ See also *kurai*

## dore どれ

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN MEANING: which

The polite form is *dochira*, which also means "who" or "where." *Dore* becomes *dono* before a noun it modifies. It becomes *doko* when expressing "where."

### 1. Used as subject

このうちどれがいちばん安いですか。

*Kono uchi dore ga ichiban yasui desu ka.*

Which is the cheapest of them?

### 2. Used as object

どれがいちばん好きですか。

*Dore ga ichiban suki desu ka.*

Which do you like best?

この3つのうちどれを選びますか。

*Kono mitsu no uchi dore o erabimasu ka.*

Which do you choose of these three?

### 3. Before noun

(changes to *dono*)

どの本がおもしろいですか。

*Dono hon ga omoshiroi desu ka.*

Which book is interesting?

4. Used with specific particle

(*dore* + *ka*: any)

この内どれか頂戴できますか。

*Kono uchi dore ka chodai dekimasu ka*

Can you spare me any of these?

(*dore* + *demo* whichever, anything)

どれでもいいから好きなのをお選び下さい。

*Dore demo ii kara suki-na no o o-erabi kudasai*

Any one is fine, so please pick the one you like.

(*dore* + *mo*: all, any)

この本はどれも子供には難しすぎる。

*Kono hon wa dore mo kodomo ni wa muzukashi-sugiru.*

Any of these books is too difficult for a child.

→ See also *doko*

**dōshite** どうして

INTERROGATIVE ADVERB MEANING why, in what way, how

1. Asking a reason

どうして遅れたんですか。

*Dōshite okureta n desu ka.*

Why were you late?

2. Asking a method

この字はどうして書くんですか。

*Kono ji wa dōshite kaku n desu ka*

How do you write this character?

→ See also *do*, *naze*

**doshitemo** どうしても

ADVERB MEANING: no matter what, (not) . . . by any means, at any cost, can't help (doing something), simply (not)

1. Used with affirmative

どうしてもそれが必要です。

*Dōshitemo sore ga hitsuyō desu.*

I need it at any cost.

どうしても彼女の事を考えてしまいます。

*Dōshitemo kanojo no koto o kangaete shimaimasu*

I can't help thinking of her.

2. Used with negative

どうしてもそれを覚えられません。

*Dōshitemo sore o oboeraremasen.*

I just can't memorize it.

どうしても行きたくありません。

*Dōshitemo ikitaku arimasen.*

I simply don't want to go.

どうしても明日までに終えなければなりません。

*Dōshitemo ashita made ni oenakereba narimasen.*

I must finish it by tomorrow no matter what.

→ See also *dōmo*

**dozo** どうぞ

ADVERB MEANING: please, certainly, sure, here it is

1. Used in imperative sentence

52 • GRAMMATICAL FUNCTION WORDS

どうぞ座ってください。

*Dōzo suwatte kudasai*

Please sit down.

こちらへどうぞ。

*Kochira e dozo.*

This way, please.

2. Used in reply to a request

「電話を貸してくれませんか。」「はい、どうぞ。」

*"Denwa o kashite kuremasen ka." "Hai, dozo."*

"Can I use your telephone?" "Yes, certainly."

「ちょっとペンを貸してくれませんか。」「どうぞ。」

*"Chotto pen o kashite kuremasen ka." "Dozo."*

"Would you lend me your pen for a while?" "Sure" (Here it is.)

e へ

PARTICLE INDICATING a destination or direction

1. After noun

ちょっとトイレへ行ってきます。

*Chotto toire e itte kimasu.*

I'm going to the rest room for a moment.

「京都へ行ったことがありますか。」「いえ、ありません。」

*"Kyoto e itta koto ga arimasu ka." "Ie, arimasen."*

"Have you been to Kyoto?" "No, I haven't."

角を右へ曲がるとバス停があります。

*Kado o migi e magaru to basutei ga arimasu*

If you turn to the right at the corner, you'll find a bus stop.

→ See also *made, ni*

## ga が (I)

PARTICLE INDICATING the subject or object for specific verb or adjective

If the subject is contrasted with other things, or if only partial information about the subject is given, *wa* replaces *ga*

## 1. After subject just introduced/recognized

この人が鈴木さんです。彼は高校の先生です。

*Kono hito ga suzuki-san desu. Kare wa koko no sensei desu.*

This is Mr. Suzuki. He is a high school teacher.

信号の向こうにガソリンスタンドがあります。

*Shingo no mukō ni gasorin sutando ga arimasu.*

There's a gas station on the other side of the traffic signal.

とてもおいしいにおいがします。

*Totemo oishii nioi ga shimasu.*

It smells very delicious.

## 2. After stressed subject

私がそれをします。

*Watashi ga sore o shimasu.*

I'll do it. ( Let me do it./ I should do it )

## 3. After interrogative

何がそんなに面白いのですか。

*Nani ga sonna ni omoshiroi no desu ka.*

What is so funny?

## 4. After subject in a relative clause

私が買ったカメラは日本製です。

*Watashi ga katta kamera wa nihon sei desu.*

The camera I bought is Japanese-made

## 5. After subject in a subordinate clause

54 • GRAMMATICAL FUNCTION WORDS

洋子が来たら教えてください。

*Yoko ga kutara oshiete kudasai*

When Yoko comes, please tell me.

雨が降れば行くのをやめます。

*Ame ga fureba iku no o yamemasu*

If it rains, I'll give up going.

- 6 After object of verb/adjective expressing possession, existence, ability, necessity, desire, emotion, or sensation

今お金がぜんぜんありません。

*Ima o-kane ga zenzen arimasen.*

I have no money now.

日本語ができますか。

*Nihongo ga dekimasu ka.*

Can you speak Japanese?

もっと自由時間がほしい。

*Motto jiyu jikan ga hoshii.*

I want much more free time.

本当のことが知りたい。

*Hontō no koto ga shiritai.*

I want to know the truth

日本の食べ物の中では寿司がいちばん好きです。

*Nihon no tabemono no naka dewa sushi ga ichiban suki desu.*

Of Japanese foods I like sushi best.

→ See also *hoshii, no, wa*

**ga が (2)**

CONJUNCTION MEANING: but, and

- 1 Between two contrastive or opposing clauses



私はお酒は飲みますが、タバコは吸いません。

*Watashi wa o-sake wa nomimasu ga tabako wa suimasen*

I drink alcohol but don't smoke cigarettes

がんばりましたが、だめでした。

*Ganbarimashita ga dame deshita*

I tried hard but I failed

2. To simply connect two clauses

田中と申しますが、社長にお会いできますか。

*Tanaka to mōshimasu ga, shachō ni o-ai dekimasu ka.*

My name is Tanaka. Would it be possible to see the boss?

その映画を見ましたが、とてもおもしろかったですよ。

*Sono eiga o mimashita ga totemo omoshirokatta desu yo.*

I saw that movie, and it was very interesting.

3. At the end of sentence

(states condition and leaves conclusion to the hearer)

今とても忙しいんですが...

*Ima totemo isogashii n desu ga ...*

I'm very busy now ... (so I can't help you)

→ See also *daga*, *dakedo*, *keredo(mo)*, *nagara*, *no ni*

## garu がる

SUFFIX VERB (added to the stem of certain adjectives to give a more subjective feeling, or to *tai*-form of verb) MEANING' (someone) wants/feels (something)

*Garu* usually takes a 3rd person subject in the progressive form when the subject is specific.

1. After the stem of adjective expressing emotion

## 56 • GRAMMATICAL FUNCTION WORDS

彼はもっといい車を欲しがっています。

*Kare wa motto ii kuruma o hoshigatte imasu*

He wants a better car

(the particle *ga* cannot be used after the direct object with *garu*)

子供はすぐおばけの話をこわがる

*Kodomo wa sugu obake no hanashi o kowagaru*

Children are easily scared by ghost stories.

### 2. After the stem of adjective expressing sensation

あのけが人はひどく痛がっています

*Ano kega nin wa hidoku itagatte imasu.*

That injured person looks to be in terrible pain.

彼は外でとても寒がっています。

*Kare wa soto de totemo samugatte imasu.*

He is very sensitive to cold outside

### 3. After conjunctive form of verb + *ta*

(*tai + garu* becomes *tagaru*)

彼女はヨーロッパに行きたがっています

*Kanojo wa yoroppa ni ikitagatte imasu*

She is eager to visit Europe

ギターの人には歌を歌いたがる。

*Gita no hito wa uta o utaitagaru*

The guitarist wants to sing a song

→ See also *tai*, *hoshii*

## goro ころ

SUFFIX (of time) MEANING about, around

### 1. After specified point in time

私とキャロラインは今朝は7時ごろ(に)起きました。  
*Watashi to kyarorain wa kesa wa shichi ji goro (ni) oki mashita.*

Caroline and I got up about seven o'clock this morning

2. After *itsu/nan ji*

その橋はいつごろは来上りますか、  
*Sono hashi wa itsu goro dekiagarimasu ka*  
 About when will that bridge be completed?  
 何時ごろ(に)伺いましょうか。

*Nan ji goro (ni) ukagaumasho ka.*

At about what time shall I call on you?

**gurai** ぐらい

→ See *kurai*

**hajimeru** 始める

VERB MEANING begin, start (doing)

1. After conjunctive form of verb

私の友達は去年日本語を勉強し始めました。  
*Watashi no tomodachi wa kyonen nihongo o benkyo shihajimemashita.*

My friend began to study Japanese last year.

五月からピアノを習い始めます。  
*Go gatsu kara piano o naraihajimemasu.*

I will start learning piano from May

→ See also *dasu*

**hazu desu** はずです

PHRASE MEANING: be supposed/expected to (do), be sure to (do), ought to (do)

- 1 After dictionary form of verb/adjective

彼はもう着くはずです。

*Kare wa mo tsuku hazu desu.*

He is supposed to arrive here soon.

このカメラはもっと安いはずです。

*Kono kamera wa motto yasui hazu desu.*

This camera ought to be much cheaper.

- 2 After *ta*-form of verb/adjective

そう言ったはずだ。

*Sô ita hazu da.*

I'm sure I told you that.

3. After (adjectival) noun + *na/no*

ここは安全なはずです。

*Koko wa anzen-na hazu desu.*

This place ought to be safe.

彼女は病気のはずです。

*Kanojo wa byoki no hazu desu.*

I'm sure she is sick

- 3 After *nai*-form of verb/adjective

彼女はそんなことをしないはずだ。

*Kanojo wa sonna koto o shinai hazu da*

I don't expect that she is going to do such a thing

→ See also *hazu ga nai*

**hazu ga nai** はずがない

PHRASE MEANING: cannot (do), it is impossible that . . .

1. After dictionary form of verb/adjective

そんなにお金が増えるはずがない。

*Sonna ni o-kane ga mōkaru hazu ga nai.*

It is impossible that one would make so much money.

2. After *ta*-form of verb/adjective

彼がミスをしたはずがない。

*Kare ga misu o shita hazu ga nai*

He cannot have made a mistake.

3. After *nai*-form of verb/adjective

彼女がまだ来ていないはずがない。

*Kanojo ga mada kite inai hazu ga nai*

It is improbable that she has not arrived yet. (She should have already arrived.)

4. After adjectival noun + *na/no*

彼の話がうそのはずがない。

*Kare no hanashi ga uso no hazu ga nai.*

His story cannot be false.

→ See also *hazu desu*

**hō** ほう

NOUN INDICATING one of two sides being compared with the other

It is always followed by the particle *ga*.

1. After the demonstrative adjectives *kono*, *sono*, *ano*  
この方が便利です。

*Kono hō ga benri desu.*

This is more useful

2. After noun + *no*

金曜日の方が忙しいです。

*Kinyōbi no hō ga isogashii desu*

I am busier on Friday (than on other days of the week)

パンよりごはんの方が好きです

*Pan yori gohan no hō ga suki desu*

I like rice better than bread

(*yori* often indicates the other side of a comparison)

3. After dictionary form of verb/adjective

バスで行く方が便利でしょう。

*Basu de iku hō ga benri desho*

It will be more convenient to go by bus.

家で休む方がいい。

*Ie de yasumu hō ga ii.*

I would rather take a rest at home

カメラは軽い方が便利ですよ。

*Kamera wa karui hō ga benri desu yo*

A lighter camera is handier.

4. After *nai*-form of verb

そんな映画は見ない方がましです

*Sonna eiga wa minai hō ga mashi desu*

It is better for me not to see such a movie.

(*mashi da/desu* is often used with *hō*)

5. After *ta*-form of verb

歩いて行った方が速かったですね。

*Aruite itta hō ga hayakatta desu ne*

It would have been faster to go on foot.

→ See also *ho ga ii, yori*

## **hodo** ほど

PARTICLE MEANING about, or so, (not) as . . . as . . . , to the extent of, enough to (do), the more . . . the more . . .

### 1. After noun expressing length/quantity

京都駅はここから 1 キロほどです。

*Kyoto eki wa koko kara ichi kiro hodo desu.*

Kyoto Station is about one kilometer from here

10分ほどここで待ってください。

*Juppun hodo koko de matte kudasai.*

Please wait here ten minutes or so

そのコーヒーを 1 キロほどください

*Sono kohi o ichi kiro hodo kudasai*

I'll take about one kilogram of that coffee

### 2. After noun, followed by a negative

英語は日本語ほどむずかしくありません

*Eigo wa nihongo hodo muzukashiku arimasen.*

English is not as difficult as Japanese

時間ほど貴重なものはない。

*Jikan hodo kichō-na mono wa nai.*

There is nothing as precious as time.

### 3. After dictionary form of verb/adjective

海外旅行ができるほどお金がたまりました

*Kaigai ryoko ga dekiru hodo o-kane ga tamarimashita*

I saved enough money to be able to travel abroad

この本は子供でも読めるほどやさしいです。

62 • GRAMMATICAL FUNCTION WORDS

*Kono hon wa kodomo demo yomeru hodo yasashi desu*

This book is so easy that even a child can read it

彼とは話すほど好きになる。

*Kare to wa hanasu hodo suki ni naru.*

The more I talk with him, the more I like him.

4. After *ta*-form of verb

この中古の車は思ったほど高くはなかった。

*Kono chuko no kuruma wa omotta hodo takaku wa nakatta*

This used car was not as expensive as I had expected.

5. After *nai*-form of verb

私はもう歩けないほど疲れました。

*Watashi wa mo arukenai hodo tsukaremashita.*

I am so tired that I can't walk any more.

→ See also *ba hodo, bakari, kurai*

**hō ga ii** ほうがいい

PHRASE (expressing a suggestion or advice) MEANING: it would be better to (do), you had better (do)

When speaking to a person of higher status or in an indirect manner, it is better to add *to omoimasu* (I think) to the end of the phrase.

1. After dictionary form of verb

(more direct than when following *ta* form)

彼女に謝る方がいい。

*Kanojo ni ayamaru hō ga ii.*

It is better to apologize to her.

2. After *ta*-form of verb



今日は傘を持って行ったほうがいい。

*Kyō wa kasa o motte itta hō ga ii.*

You had better take along an umbrella today

もうやめたほうがいいと思います。

*Mō yameta hō ga ii to omoimasu.*

I think it would be better for you to give it up.

3. After *nai*-form of verb

そこへは行かないほうがいいですよ。

*Soko e wa ikanai hō ga ii desu yo*

It really would be better for you not to go there

→ See also *hō*

**hoka** ほか

**NOUN** whose meaning is determined by the particle which follows

Followed by *no*: another, (the) other(s), some other, else

Followed by *de*: somewhere/anywhere else

Followed by *ni*: some/any other, else

Preceded by *no* and followed by *ni/wa*: apart from, besides, in addition to, as well as, except (for), but

1. Followed by *no*, before noun it modifies

ほかの日がいいです。

*Hoka no hi ga ii desu.*

Some other day is better.

ほかの人に頼みます。

*Hoka no hito ni tanomimasu.*

I'll ask somebody else for it.

2. After noun + *no*, followed by *ni/wa*

64 • GRAMMATICAL FUNCTION WORDS

彼女のほかに知り合いはいません。

**Kanojo no hoka ni shiriai wa imasen.**

I have no acquaintances besides her

ビールのほかは何もいりません。

**Biiru no hoka wa nani mo irimasen**

I don't need anything other than beer

- 3 Used as noun, followed by *no*

ほかのを見せてください。

**Hoka no o misete kudasai**

Please show me another.

- 4 Used as adverb, followed by *ni/de*

ほかでもっと安いのが丁に入ります

**Hoka de motto yasui no ga te ni hairimasu**

You can get a cheaper one somewhere else

ほかにだれが行くのですか。

**Hoka ni dare ga iku no desu ka**

Who else is going?

→ See also *igai*

**hoka nai** ほかない

PHRASE MEANING can do nothing but (do), cannot help (doing) something

- 1 After dictionary form of verb

あきらめるほかありません。

**Akirameru hoka arimasen**

I can do nothing but give up.

**hoshii** ほしい

ADJECTIVE MEANING want, want (someone) to, would like (someone) to

The subject is usually the 1st person in declarative sentences, and the 2nd person in questions. However, when *hoshii* is followed by *garu*, the 3rd person subject must be used.

1. After object noun + *ga*

私はとてもビデオカメラがほしいです

*Watashi wa totemo bideo kamera ga hoshii desu.*

I want a video camera very much

何がほしいのですか。

*Nani ga hoshii no desu ka.*

What do you want?

2. After *te*-form of verb

ちょっと手伝ってほしいのですが

*Chotto tetsudatte hoshii no desu ga.*

I want you to help me for a while

誕生日プレゼントにコンピューターを買ってほしいのです。

*Tanjobi purezento ni konpyutā o katte hoshii no desu.*

I want you to buy me a computer as a birthday present.

→ See also *ga* (1), *garu*, *morau*

**hotondo** ほとんど

ADVERB MEANING almost, hardly, scarcely, little, few

66 • GRAMMATICAL FUNCTION WORDS

1. In affirmative sentence

仕事はほとんど終わりました。

*Shigoto wa hotondo owarimashita.*

The work is almost finished.

2. In negative sentence

今週はほとんど日本語を勉強しませんでした。

*Konshu wa hotondo nihongo o benkyo shumasen deshita.*

I have hardly studied Japanese this week

ほとんどだれもそれを買いません。

*Hotondo dare mo sore o kaimasen*

Hardly anybody buys it.

▶ See also *metta ni, amari*

**igai** 以外

NOUN MEANING: except (for), but, besides, in addition to, apart from, (those) other than

It is often followed by the particle *ni* or *wa*.

1. After noun

水曜日以外は毎日働いています

*Suiyobi igai wa mainichi hataraitte imasu*

I work every day except Wednesday

新聞以外はあまり何も読みません

*Shinbun igai wa amari nani mo yomimasen*

Other than the newspaper I read almost nothing

私はあなた以外に日本人の友人がいません

*Watashi wa anata igai ni nihonjin no yujin ga imasen*

I have no Japanese friends apart from you.

2 After dictionary form of verb

逃げる以外に方法がない。

*Nigeru igai ni hohō ga nai.*

There is no other way except to run away

3 After reported statement ending with *to iu koto*

私は彼が先生だということ以外は何も知りません。

*Watashi wa kare ga sensei da to iū koto igai wa nani mo shirimasen.*

I know nothing except that he is a teacher

→ See also *hoka*

## igo 以後

NOUN (used of time) MEANING\* after, since, from (now) on

1. After noun expressing time

(usually followed by a particle)

午後7時以後に電話してください。

*Gogo shichi ji igo ni denwa shite kudasai.*

Please call me after 7 P M

次の月曜日以後は大阪にいます

*Tsugi no getsuyōbi igo wa osaka ni imasu.*

I'll be in Osaka from next Monday on.

2. Used as adverb

以後気をつけてください。

*Igo ki o tsukete kudasai.*

Please be more careful from now on.

→ See also *ikō, irai, kara*

**ijō** 以上

NOUN MEANING. more than, over, mentioned above, (not) any longer, (no) more, once . . . , now that . . . , since, as long as

1. After noun expressing length/quantity/price

そこまで行くのに1時間以上かかります

*Soko made iku no ni ichi jikan ijō kakarimasu*

It will take more than one hour to get there

このトンネルは2キロメートル以上あります

*Kono tonneru wa ni kirometoru ijō arimasu*

This tunnel is more than two kilometers long.

2. Followed by *no* + noun

以上の理由でこれは中止になりました

*Ijō no riyu de kore wa chūshi ni narimashita*

This was cancelled for the reasons mentioned above.

18才以上の人しか入れません。

*Juhassai ijō no hito shika hairemasen.*

Only people who are eighteen and over are allowed to enter

3. After the demonstrative pronouns *kore*, *sore*, *are*

これ以上ここで待てません。

*Kore ijō koko de matemasen*

I can't wait here any longer

それ以上は無理です。

*Sore ijō wa muri desu*

Any more than that is impossible

4. At the end of a clause

それをやると決めた以上努力しなければなりません。

*Sore o yaru to kimeta ijō dorvoku shinakereba narimasen*

Now that you've decided to do it, you must work hard

(*kara niwa* can replace *ijo*)

ここまでやった以上完成しよう。

*Koko made yatta ijo kansai shiyo*

As long as we've come this far, let's complete it.

## ichiban いちばん

ADVERB INDICATING the superlative degree of an adjective/adverb

It is originally a noun meaning "the first," "number one," or "the first place."

1. Before adjective/(adjectival) noun/adverb

どのカメラがいちばん安いですか。

*Dono kamera ga ichiban yasui desu ka.*

Which camera is the cheapest?

「だれがいちばんじょうずに日本語を話しますか。」「マイクです。」

*"Dare ga ichiban jozu ni nihongo o hanashimasu ka" "Mike desu."*

"Who speaks Japanese the best?" "Mike does."

2. Used with predicate of emotion

私はビールがいちばん好きです。

*Watashi wa biru ga ichiban suki desu.*

I like beer best

私は今いちばんイギリスへ行きたい

*Watashi wa ima ichiban igirisu e ikitai*

I want to go to England most now

→ See also *mottomo*

70 • GRAMMATICAL FUNCTION WORDS

**ikenai** いけない

ADJECTIVE MEANING\* must not, have to, ought to, in case , bad, wrong

1. After *te*-form of verb + *wa*

ここでたばこを吸ってはいけません

*Koko de tabako o sutte wa ikemasen*

You must not smoke here.

あまりお酒を飲んではいけないよ

*Amari o-sake o nonde wa ikenai yo*

You mustn't drink too much.

2. After the stem of *nai*-form of verb + *nakereba*

もう行かなければいけません。

*Mô ikanakereba ikemasen*

I have to go now.

(*ikemasen* may be replaced by *narimasen*)

3. After dictionary form of verb + *to*, followed by *kara*

雨が降るといけないから傘を持って行ったほうがいいですよ。

*Ame ga furu to ikenai kara kasa o motte itta ho ga ii desu yo*

It's better to take an umbrella with you because it'll be bad if it rains (You had better take an umbrella in case it rains )

4. Used as adjective

それのどこがいけないのですか。

*Sore no doko ga ikenai no desu ka.*

What's wrong with it?

→ See also *naranai*



**ikō** 以降

NOUN MEANING: from . . . on, after

1. After noun expressing point in time, followed by particle  
来週以降はとても忙しいです。

*Raishu ikō wa totemo isogashii desu*

I'll be very busy from next week on.

今晚9時以降に電話してください

*Konban ku ji ikō ni denwa shite kudasai.*

Please call me after nine tonight.

→ See also *igo*, *irai*, *kara***ikura . . . temo/demo** いくら . . . ても／でも

PHRASE MEANING no matter how (much/hard), at the . . . est, even . . .

1. Used with the stem of *te*-form of verb

いくらがんばってもよくならない。

*Ikura ganbattemo yoku naranai.*

No matter how hard I try, it doesn't go well.

2. Used with *ku* form of adjective

いくら遅くても5時までに着きたい

*Ikura osokutemo go ji made ni tsukitai.*

I want to arrive there by five at the latest

3. Used with noun

いくら天才でもその問題は解けない。

72 • GRAMMATICAL FUNCTION WORDS

***Ikura tensai demo sono mondai wa tokenai***

Even a genius cannot solve that problem.

→ See also *demo*, *temo*

**inai** 以内

NOUN MEANING: within, less than, not more than

1. After noun expressing length/quantity/price  
(followed by *ni*)

10分以内に帰ります。

***Juppun inai ni modorimasu.***

I'll be back within ten minutes.

(followed by *da/desu*)

旅行の費用は5万円以内です

***Ryoko no hyo wa go man en inai desu***

The expense for the trip will be less than fifty thousand yen

(followed by *no*)

駅はここから歩いて20分以内の所です

***Eki wa koko kara aruite ni juppun inai no tokoro desu.***

The station is within twenty minutes' walk from here

**irai** 以来

CONJUNCTION MEANING: SINCE

1. After noun expressing a past point in time

先月以来雨が降っていません。

***Sengetsu irai ame ga futte imasen***

It has not rained since last month.

2. After *te*-form of verb

私は教師になって以来5年になります

*Watashi wa kyōshi ni natte irai go nen ni narimasu.*

It is five years since I became a teacher

→ See also *igo, ikō, kara*

**iru** いる

VERB MEANING be, there be, exist, stay, have, be . . . ing, have (done), be (done), have been . . . ing

1. Used for animate subject

姉は今大阪にいます。

*Ane wa ima ōsaka ni imasu*

My older sister is now staying (or living) in Osaka

この動物園には珍しい動物がいます。

*Kono dobutsuen ni wa mezurashii dōbutsu ga imasu.*

There are unique animals in this zoo.

2. Used for animate object + *ga*

私は兄弟が3人います。

*Watashi wa kyodai ga san nin imasu.*

I have three brothers.

3. After *te*-form of verb

私は今友人を待っています。

*Watashi wa ima yujin o matte imasu.*

I am waiting for a friend of mine now.

車の窓が開いていますよ。

*Kuruma no mado ga aite imasu yo.*

Your car window is open.

私は英字新聞を読んでいます。

74 • GRAMMATICAL FUNCTION WORDS

*Watashi wa eiji shinbun o yonde imasu*

I am reading an English language newspaper.

(or I read an English language newspaper [habitual action])

その店はもう閉まっています。

*Sono mise wa mo shimatte imasu*

That store is closed already.

きのうからずっと雨が降っています

*Kino kara zutto ame ga futte imasu.*

It has been raining since yesterday.

何をすべきか考えてます。

*Nani o subeki ka kangaetemasu.*

I am thinking what to do.

(informal spoken language often uses the abbreviated *ru/masu* instead of *iru/imasu* after *te*-form of verbs when expressing a continuing action or state)

あなたはとても疲れてるみたいだ

*Anata wa totemo tsukareteru mitai da*

You look very tired.

「この言葉を知っていますか」「いいえ、知りません。」

*"Kono kotoba o shitte imasu ka" "Ie, shirimasen."*

"Do you know this word?" "No, I don't know it."

(English verbs expressing a condition or state are usually translated into the progressive form in Japanese. However, the negative of *shitte iru* [*shitteru*] is the non-progressive form *shiranai*.)

→ See also *aru, oru, masu, temasu*

**isshoni** いっしょに

ADVERB MEANING with (someone), together, at the same time

1. After noun + *to*

「だれといっしょにそこへ行ったのですか」 「友達とです。」

*"Dare to isshoni soko e itta no desu ka."* *"Tomodachi to desu."*

"Who did you go there with?" "With a friend."

2. Used as adverb

今からいっしょに食事をしませんか、

*Ima kara isshoni shokuryō o shimasen ka*

Shall we have dinner together now?

山本さんと山田さんがいっしょに着きました

*Yamamoto-san to Yamada-san ga isshoni tsukimashita.*

Mr. Yamamoto and Mr. Yamada arrived at the same time.

→ See also *to*

**itadaku** いただく

RESPECTFUL VERB MEANING be given, get, receive, eat, have (something) done

It is used to express respect to the giver.

1. As set phrase said before meals

いただきます。

*Itadakimasu.*

(Lit.) I'll be given food

2. After object noun + *o*

学校の先生から手紙をいただきました。

*Gakko no sensei kara tegami o itadakimashita*

I got a letter from a teacher at my school

これをいただきたいのですが。

76 • GRAMMATICAL FUNCTION WORDS

*Kore o itadakitai no desu ga.*

I'd like to have this.

3. After *te*-form of verb

そうしていただきます。

*So shite itadakimasu*

I'll have you do so (I hope you'll kindly do so)

ちょっとこれを持っていたがきたいのですが。

*Chotto kore o motte itadakitai no desu ga*

I'd like you to hold this for a while

この原稿を見ていたがけますか

*Kono genko o mite itadakemasu ka.*

Would you look through this manuscript (for me)?

すみませんが、駅に行く道を教えていたがけませんか。

*Sumimasen ga, eki ni iku michi o oshiete itadakemasen ka*

Excuse me, but could you tell me the way to the station?

▶ See also *morau*

**itsu** いつ

INTERROGATIVE WORD MEANING when, what time

1. Used in a question

いつここへ来たんですか。

*Itsu koko e kita n desu ka.*

When did you come here?

いつできるのかたずねましたか。

*Itsu dekiru no ka tazunemashita ka*

Did you ask when it will be finished?

(reported speech)

2 With specific particle in a question

彼女はいつから病気なのですか、

*Kanojo wa itsu kara byoki-na no desu ka.*

Since when has she been sick?

いつまで日本にいるんですか。

*Itsu made nihon ni iru n desu ka*

Until when (how long) are you in Japan?

- 3 Used in noun clause in a declarative sentence

いつ始まるのかわかりません。

*Itsu hajimaru no ka wakarimasen.*

I don't know when it begins.

4. Followed by the subject marker *ga*

いつがよろしいですか。

*Itsu ga yoroshii desu ka.*

When will be convenient for you?

## ja ジャ

INFORMAL PARTICLE that is a euphonic change of *dewa*

1. After (adjectival) noun

(used for making the negative form of *da/desu*)

これは私のかばんじゃありません

*Kore wa watashi no kaban ja arimasen*

This is not my bag

(indicates a condition when followed by negative form of a potential verb)

この天気じゃ出かけられない。

*Kono tenki ja dekakerarenai.*

We can't go out in this weather.

このコンピューターじゃそれはできません。

78 • GRAMMATICAL FUNCTION WORDS

*Kono konpyutā ja sore wa dekimasen.*

It can't be done with this computer.

- 2 After the stem of *te*-form of verb whose dictionary form ends with *bu*, *gu*, *mu*, or *nu*, and followed by *ikenai*

ここで遊んじゃいけません。

*Koko de asonja ikemasen.*

You must not play here.

- See also *cha*, *dewa*, *ikenai*, *tewa*

**ju** 中

NOUN MEANING\* throughout, within, all over

1. After noun expressing period of time

私は冬休み中スキーをしていました

*Watashi wa fuyu yasumi jū suku o shite imashita*

I was skiing throughout the winter vacation

1日中テレビを見ていました。

*Ichī nichi ju terebi o mite imashita*

I was watching TV all day long

2. After noun expressing period of time, followed by *ni*

今週中に仕上げてください。

*Konshu ju ni shiagete kudasai.*

Please complete it within this week.

3. After noun expressing place

日本中を旅行したいと思います

*Nihon jū o ryoko shitai to omoumasu.*

I think I'd like to travel all over Japan.

- See also *chu ni*



**ka** か

PARTICLE MEANING (either) . or . , whether

It is also used to form questions, extend invitations, or make requests.

## 1. Between two or more nouns

大学へはバスか地下鉄で行けます

*Daigaku e wa basu ka chikatetsu de ikemasu.*

You can go to the university by either bus or subway.

## 2. After each of two or more verbs in dictionary form

大学に行くか就職するか決めなければならない

*Daigaku ni iku ka shushoku suru ka kimenakereba narunai*

I have to decide either to go to university or get a job

遊園地に行くか映画を見に行くかしましょう

*Yuenchi ni iku ka eiga o mi ni iku ka shimasho.*

Let's either go to an amusement park or go to see a movie

3. After noun clause + *no*

何が起ったのかわかりません。

*Nani ga okotta no ka wakarimasen*

I don't know what happened

この字はどうやって書くのか教えてください

*Kono ji wa do yatte kaku no ka oshiete kudasai*

Please teach me how to write this character.

これが本物なのかどうかわかりません

*Kore ga honmono na no ka doka wakarimasen*

I don't know whether or not this is the real thing

(if preceding clause has no question words, *doka* [or not] may be put after *ka*)

4 At the end of question in indirect speech

彼女にどこへ行くのかたずねましたが、答えませんでした。

*Kanojo ni doko e iku no ka tazunemashita ga, kotaemasen deshita.*

I asked her where she was going, but she didn't answer

5. At the end of sentence

「これはあなたのかばんですか」「はい、そうです」

*"Kore wa anata no kaban desu ka" "Hai, so desu"*

"Is this your bag?" "Yes, it is."

「さしみは食べますか」「はい、食べます」

*"Sashimi wa tabemasu ka" "Hai, tabemasu"*

"Do you eat sashimi?" "Yes, I do."

彼のことをどう思いますか。

*Kare no koto o do omoimasu ka*

What do you think of him?

6. After *masen*

(to make an invitation)

いっしょにコンサートに行きませんか。

*Isshoni konsato ni ikimasen ka*

Would you like to go to the concert with me?

7 After *te*-form of verb + *kuremasen*

(to make a request)

自転車を貸してくれませんか

*Jitensha o kashite kuremasen ka.*

Would you please lend me your bicycle?

8. After interrogative word

先生はだれかとどこかへ行きました

*Sensei wa dare ka to doko ka e ikimashita*

The teacher went somewhere with somebody

何か飲むものが欲しいですね。

*Nani ka nomu mono ga hoshii desu ne*

I want something to drink, don't you?

→ See also *kureru, masen*

## kagiri 限り

CONJUNCTION MEANING: as long as . . . , as far as . . . is concerned,  
as . . . as possible, unless, not later than, just

### 1. After dictionary form of verb/adjective

私の知る限り、彼はうそをついたことがない。

*Watashi no shiru kagiri kare wa uso o tsuita koto ga nai*

As far as I know he has never told a lie

ここにいる限り静かにしなければならない

*Koko ni iru kagiri shizuka ni shinakereba naranai*

We must keep quiet as long as we stay here

### 2. After *nai*-form of verb

雨が降らない限り予定通り行われます。

*Ame ga furanai kagiri yotei dori okonawaremasu*

It will be held as scheduled unless it rains

### 3. After noun expressing time limit

申し込みは明日限りです。

*Moshikomi wa asu kagiri desu.*

Applications must be made no later than tomorrow

### 4. After specific noun + *ni*

今回に限り罰は与えません。

*Konkai ni kagiri batsu wa ataemasen*

This time only I won't punish you.

### 5. After *dekiru*, followed by adverb

82 • GRAMMATICAL FUNCTION WORDS

できる限り早く出かけたいと思います

*Dekiru kagiri hayaku dekaketai to omoimasu.*

I'd like to leave as soon as possible

→ See also *dake*

**kamoshirenai** かもしれない

ADJECTIVE MEANING: may, might, possibly

1. After dictionary form of verb/adjective

あすは雨が降るかもしれない。

*Asu wa yuki ga furu kamoshirenai.*

It may snow tomorrow.

彼の、うことが正しいのかもしれない

*Kare no iu koto ga tadashii no kamoshiremasen.*

Possibly what he says is right

2. After *ta*-form of verb/adjective

その方が良かったのかもしれない

*Sono ho ga yokatta no kamoshiremasen*

It might have been better.

もう帰ったのかもしれない。

*Mo kaetta no kamoshirenai*

She may have already gone.

3. After *nai*-form of verb

彼はいつ、よに行かないのかもしれない

*Kare wa isshoni ikanai no kamoshirenai.*

He may not go together (with us)

4. After (adjectival) noun

日本語はあなたには簡単かもしれません。

*Nihongo wa anata ni wa kantan kamoshiremasen*

Japanese language might be easy for you

→ See also *desho*

## kana かな

INFORMAL PARTICLE MEANING: I wonder if . . .

It can be replaced with *kashira* (used mostly by women)

### 1. At the end of sentence

電車に間に合うかな。

*Densha ni ma ni au kana.*

I wonder if I will be in time for the train.

彼女も来るかな。

*Kanojo mo kuru kana.*

I wonder if she will come, too.

これでいいかな。

*Kore de ii kana*

I wonder if this is all right.

### 2 After (adjectival) noun (+ *na no*)

これはだれのかばん(なの)かな

*Kore wa dare no kaban (na no) kana*

I wonder whose bag this is.

(*na no* after the adjectival noun is often dropped)

### 3 After conjunctive form of verb + *temo ii*

窓を開けてもいいかな。

*Mado o aketemo ii kana*

I wonder if it's okay to open the window?

## 84 • GRAMMATICAL FUNCTION WORDS

### **kanarazushimo** 必ずしも

ADVERB (used with a negative) MEANING (not) always, (not) necessarily, (not) all

It can be shortened to *kanarazu*, or replaced by *itsumo*.

#### 1. Used with negative

お金は必ずしも必要ではない。

*O-kane wa kanarazushimo hitsuyo dewa nai.*

Money is not always necessary

#### 2. Used with dictionary form of verb/adjective + *to wa kagiranai*

それが必ずしもうまく行くとは限らない

*Sore ga kanarazushimo umaku iku to wa kagiranai.*

It will not necessarily go well

先生が必ずしも正しいとは限りません。

*Sensei ga kanarazushimo tadashii to wa kagirimasen.*

The teacher is not always right.

### **kara** から

PARTICLE MEANING from, out of, at, through, since, after, because

When used to mean "because," it is the speaker's opinion that the statement expressed before *kara* is the reason or cause for the action expressed in the main clause. That is, the reason or cause may be subjective or emotional, unlike *node*.

#### 1. After noun expressing point in time when something begins

夏休みは7月20日からです。

*Natsu yasumi wa shichi gatsu hatsuka kara desu*

The summer vacation is from July twentieth.

学校は8時半から始まります。

*Gakkō wa hachi ji han kara hajimarimasu*

School begins at eight thirty

(kara may be replaced with ni)

あの店は午前10時から午後6時まで開いています。

*Ano mise wa gozen jū ji kara gogo roku ji made aite imasu.*

That store is open from 10 A.M. to 6 P.M.

きのうから風邪をひいています

*Kinō kara kaze o hite imasu.*

I've had a cold since yesterday

2. After noun expressing place

東京から京都まで新幹線で来ました

*Tōkyō kara kyōto made shinkansen de kimashita*

I came from Tokyo to Kyoto by shinkansen

彼女は怒って部屋から出て行った

*Kanojo wa okotte heya kara dete itta*

She got angry and went out of the room.

3. After noun expressing material/ingredients

日本酒は米から作られます。

*Nihonshu wa kome kara tsukuraremasu.*

Japanese sake is made from rice.

4. After te-form of verb

テレビを見てから勉強します。

*Terebi o mite kara benkyō shimasu.*

I'll study after watching TV.

ここで休んでから帰ります。

*Koko de yasunde kara kaerimasu*

I'll go home after taking a rest here

日本に来てから6ヶ月になります。

*Nihon ni kite kara rokkagetsu ni narimasu*

It is six months since I came to Japan

(here *kara* may be dropped)

5 After dictionary form of verb/adjective

雨が降るから傘を持って行った方がいい。

*Ame ga furu kara kasa o motte itta ho ga ii.*

It's better to take an umbrella with you because it's going to rain.

私がしますから休んでください。

*Watashi ga shimasu kara yasunde kudasai.*

I'll do it, so please take a rest.

高いからそれは買いません。

*Takai kara sore wa kaimasen.*

I don't buy it because it is expensive

6 After *nai*-form of verb

だれにも 知らないから教えて下さい。

*Dare ni mo iwanai kara oshiete kudasai.*

I won't tell anybody so please tell me

7 After (adjectival) noun + *da/desu*

あすは休みですからどこかへ遊びに行きましょう。

*Asu wa yasumi desu kara doko ka e asobi ni ikimasho.*

Let's go somewhere to have fun since tomorrow is a holiday

8 After *ta*-form of verb/adjective

私が休んだのは風邪をひいたからです。

*Watashi ga yasunda no wa kaze o huta kara desu.*

It is because I caught cold that I was absent

行きたくなかったから行きませんでした。

*Ikitaku nakatta kara ikimasen deshita.*

I didn't go because I didn't want to.

→ See also *dakara*, *de*, *iko*, *igo*, *irai*, *ni*, *node*, *to*



**kata** 方

SUFFIX MEANING: how to (do), way/method of (doing)

1. After conjunctive form of verb

かなの書き方を教えてください

*Kana no kakikata o oshiete kudasai*

Please teach me how to write *kana*.

(the object of the verb *kaku* [*kana*] must be indicated by *no*, since the object of the main verb *oshieru* [*kakikata*] is already indicated by *o*)

日本語の勉強の仕方がわかりません。

*Nihongo no benkyo no shikata ga wakarimasen.*

I don't know how to study Japanese

(*shikata*, the conjunctive form of *suru* + *kata*, is always preceded by noun + *no*)

(the dictionary form of verb + *hohô* also expresses "how to [do]"; object of the verb before *hohô* must be indicated by *o*)

コンピューターを操作する方法を教えてください。

*Konpyuta o sosa suru hohô o oshiete kudasai*

Please teach me how to operate the computer

**kawari ni** 代わりに

PHRASE MEANING: instead of, for, as, in exchange for, in return (for), to make up for

1. After noun + *no*

彼が私の代わりにその会に出てくれました。

*Kare ga watashi no kawari ni sono kai ni dete kuremashita*

He attended the meeting instead of me

88 • GRAMMATICAL FUNCTION WORDS

カメラはメモの代わりになる。

*Kamera wa memo no kawari ni naru*

A camera will do for (taking) notes.

2. After dictionary form of verb

英語を教える代わりに日本語を教えてください。

*Eigo o oshieru kawari ni nihongo o oshiete kudasai*

Please teach me Japanese in exchange for teaching you English

手伝う代わりにお金を貸してくれませんか。

*Tetsudau kawari ni o-kane o kashite kuremasen ka*

Will you lend me money in return for my helping you?

3. After *ta*-form of verb

彼はお金を無駄にした代わりに一生懸命働いている

*Kare wa o-kane o muda ni shita kawari ni isshokenmei hataratte iru.*

He is working hard to make up for having wasted money

4. After *nai*-form of verb

何も食べない代わりにたくさんジュースを飲んだ。

*Nani mo tabenai kawari ni takusan jusu o nonda*

I didn't eat anything but instead drank a lot of juice

5. Used as adverb

代わりにこのペンダントをあげます。

*Kawari ni kono pendanto o agemasu*

I will give you this pendant in return.

**keredo(mo)** けれど(も)

CONJUNCTION MEANING: though, although, but, however, and, I wish

The final *mo* is often dropped in more informal speech

1. At the beginning of sentence

私は彼に来るように何度も頼んだ。けれども来なかった。

*Watashi wa kare ni kuru yo ni nando mo tanonda. Keredomo konakatta.*

I repeatedly asked him to come. But he didn't.

2. At the end of sentence

今ちょっと忙しいんですけれども

*Ima chotto isogashii n desu keredomo.*

I'm a little too busy now (so I can't help you).

3. After dictionary form of verb/adjective

太郎とはよく話すけれどもとてもいい人です。

*Taro to wa yoku hanasu keredomo totemo ii hito desu*

I often talk with Taro, and I think he is a nice person.

4. After *tai*-form of verb

旅行に行きたいけれどもひまがありません

*Ryokō ni ikitai keredomo hima ga arimasen.*

Though I want to go on a trip, I have no time.

5. After *ta*-form of verb/adjective

その店に行ったけれども閉まっていた

*Sono mise ni itta keredomo shimatte imashita*

I went to the store, but it was closed.

そんなものは欲しくなかったけれども買ってしまいました。

*Sonna mono wa hoshiku nakatta keredomo katte shimaishita.*

Though I didn't want such a thing, I bought it in spite of myself.

6. After *nai*-form of verb

彼はあまり勉強しないけれども成績がいい

*Kare wa amari benkyō shinai keredomo seiseki ga ii*

90 • GRAMMATICAL FUNCTION WORDS

He doesn't study hard, but he gets good marks.

7 After (adjectival) noun + *da/desu*

彼はまじめだけれども面白くありません。

*Kare wa majime da keredomo omoshiroku arimasen.*

He is earnest, but not interesting

▶ See also *duga*, *dakedo*, *ga* (2), *no ni*

**kesshite** 決して

ADVERB (used with a negative) MEANING never, by no means, (not) at all, on no account

1. Used with negative

あなたのことは決して忘れません

*Anata no koto wa kesshite wasuremasen*

I shall never forget you.

この問題は決してもずかしくはありません

*Kono mondai wa kesshite muzukashiku wa arimasen*

This problem is by no means difficult

彼は決してそんなことをする人ではない

*Kare wa kesshite sonna koto o suru hito dewa nai*

He is the last person to do such a thing

▶ See also *mattaku*, *zenzen*

**kore** これ

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN MEANING this, these, it

It refers to an object or objects close to both the speaker and the hearer. The polite form is *kochira*, which also means "this person"

or "this direction " *Kore* becomes *kono* before nouns it modifies. Moreover, it becomes *koko* when expressing "this place" or "here."

1. Followed by particle

これがきのう買ったカメラです。

*Kore ga kino katta kamera desu*

This is the camera that I bought yesterday.

これを見たことがありますか。

*Kore o mita koto ga arimasu ka.*

Have you ever seen this?

これからがんばります。

*Kore kara ganbarimasu.*

I'll work hard from now on

こちらが山本さんです。

*Kochira ga yamamoto-san desu.*

This is Ms. Yamamoto.

ここが私の家です。

*Koko ga watashi no ie desu*

This is my house.

「今日の新聞はどこですか。」、「ここにあります。」

"*Kyō no shinbun wa doko desu ka.*" "*Koko ni arimasu* "

"Where is today's newspaper?" "Here it is "

2. Followed by *da/desu*

神戸行きのプラトホームはここですか

*Kōbe yuki no purattohomu wa koko desu ka.*

Is this the platform for the train to Kobe?

3. Before noun

この靴をください。

*Kono kutsu o kudasai.*

92 • GRAMMATICAL FUNCTION WORDS

Give me these shoes. (I'll take these shoes )

→ See also *are*, *sore*

**koso** こそ

PARTICLE stressing something that is worth mentioning

It essentially takes the place of the particle *ga* or *wa* after the subject.

1. After noun

これこそ私のほしい本です。

*Kore koso watashi no hoshu hon desu*

This is the very book that I want

私こそお礼を、わなければなりません

*Watashi koso o-rei o wanakereba narimasen.*

I (not you) should be expressing thanks.

**koto** こと

NOUN AND NOMINALIZER MEANING thing (in the abstract sense),  
...ing, to (do), (the fact) that

When used to nominalize the preceding clause, the nominalized phrase expresses a fact which is already accomplished or which the speaker supposes will be accomplished. *Koto* tends to be taken as an object by verbs of mental activity such as knowing, recognizing, understanding, hoping, learning, etc

1. After noun + *no*

彼女のことはよく知っています。

*Kanojo no koto wa yoku shitte imasu.*

I know things of her well. (I know her well.)

2. After dictionary form of verb/adjective

今日はすることがたくさんあります

*Kyo wa suru koto ga takusan arimasu.*

I have a lot of things to do today

見ることは信じることです。

*Miru koto wa shinjiru koto desu.*

Seeing is believing.

よく休むことが必要です。

*Yoku yasumu koto ga hitsuyo desu.*

It is necessary (for you) to get enough rest.

日本は物価が高いことはよく知られている

*Nihon wa bukka ga takai koto wa yoku shirarete iru*

That prices are high in Japan is well known.

3. After *ta*-form of verb/adjective

私が言ったことを彼に伝えてください

*Watashi ga itta koto o kare ni tsutaete kudasai*

Please tell him what I've said.

さち子さんがヨーロッパに行ったことを知っていますか

*Sachiko-san ga yoroppa ni itta koto o shitte imasu ka*

Did you know that Sachiko has gone to Europe?

4. After declarative statement

(used as a command form in written notices)

敷地内に入らないこと。

*Shikichi nai ni hairanai koto.*

Don't enter the premises.

- See also *koto ga aru, koto ga dekiru, koto ni naru, koto ni natte iru, koto ni shite iru, koto ni suru, mono, no, to, to iu*

94 • GRAMMATICAL FUNCTION WORDS

**koto ga aru** ことがある

PREDICATIVE PHRASE MEANING\* there are occasions when, have (done), had an experience that

1. After dictionary form of verb

あの人と話すことができますか。

*Ano hito to hanasu koto ga arimasu ka*

Do you have occasion to talk with that person?

2. After *ta*-form of verb

「北海道へ行ったことがありますか。」「いいえ、ありません。」

*"Hokkaido e ita koto ga arimasu ka." "Iie, arimasen."*

"Have you ever been to Hokkaido?" "No, I haven't."

まだスキーをしたことはありません。

*Mada yuku o shita koto ga arimasen*

I haven't ever skied

3. After *nai*-form of verb

たまに食事をしないことがあります

*Tama ni shokuryō o shinai koto ga arimasu*

There are occasions when I don't eat a meal

→ See also *koto*

**koto ga dekiru** ことができる

PREDICATIVE PHRASE MEANING\* can (do), be able to (do)

1. After dictionary form of verb

3時までに来ることができますか

*San ji made ni kuru koto ga dekimasu ka.*

Are you able to come by three o'clock?



私はあまり漢字を書くことができません。

*Watashi wa amari kanji o kaku koto ga dekimasen.*

I cannot write many Chinese characters.

飛行機の予約を取ることができました。

*Hikoki no yoyaku o toru koto ga dekimashita.*

I was able to make a plane reservation.

2 After *nai*-form of verb

秘密を洩らさないことができますか。

*Himitsu o morasanai koto ga dekimasu ka.*

Can you keep (from letting out) a secret?

• See also *dekiru, koto*

**koto ni naru** ことになる

PREDICATIVE PHRASE MEANING: it is decided/arranged that

1. After dictionary form of verb

今度東京に転勤することになりました。

*Kondo tokyo ni tenkin suru koto ni narimashita.*

It is decided that I'll be transferred to the Tokyo office shortly.

**koto ni natte iru** ことになっている

PREDICATIVE PHRASE MEANING: be scheduled to (do), be expected to (do)

1. After dictionary form of verb

彼は9時にここに着くことになっています。

*Kare wa ku ji ni koko ni tsuku koto ni natte imasu.*

He is due to arrive here at nine.

私たちは図書館で会うことになっています。

*Watashi tachi wa toshokan de au koto ni natte imasu*

We are to meet at the library.

# **koto ni shite iru** ことにしている

PREDICATIVE PHRASE MEANING make a practice of (doing), make it a rule to (do)

## 1 After dictionary form of verb

寝る前に本を読むことにしています

*Neru mae ni hon o yomu koto ni shite imasu.*

I make it a rule to read (a book) before going to bed

## 2. After *nai*-form of verb

夜ふかししないことにしています。

*Yofukashi shinai koto ni shite imasu*

I make it a rule not to stay up late

# **koto ni suru** ことにする

PREDICATIVE PHRASE MEANING decide to (do), make up one's mind to (do)

## 1 After dictionary form of verb

タバコをやめることにしました。

*Tabako o yameru koto ni shimashita*

I've made up my mind to give up smoking

## 2. After *nai*-form of verb

無駄遣いはしないことにしました。

*Muda zukai wa shunai koto ni shimashita*

I've decided not to waste money.

## **kudasai** ください

POLITE COMMAND FORM MEANING please give . to me, please do something (for me)

It is usually used for expressing a request on the speaker's part.

### 1. After noun + *o*

8時に電話をください。

*Hachi ji ni denwa o kudasai.*

Please give me a call at eight.

このジャケットとズボンをください。

*Kono jaketto to zubon o kudasai.*

Please give me this jacket and these slacks. (I'll take this jacket and these slacks.)

### 2. After *te*-form of verb

この漢字の書き方を教えてください。

*Kono kanji no kakikata o oshiete kudasai.*

Please teach me how to write this kanji

### 3. After *nai*-form of verb + *de*

まだ行かないでください。

*Mada ikunai de kudasai.*

Please don't leave yet.

→ See also *kureru*, Polite Language (II)

98 • GRAMMATICAL FUNCTION WORDS

**kurai** くらい

PARTICLE MEANING\* about, approximately, as      as      , to the extent of . . . , only, at least, enough      to (do)

*Kurai* can be used in place of *kurai*.

1. After noun expressing quantity/length

10冊くらい日本語の本を買いました

*Jussatsu kurai nihongo no hon o kaimashita*

I bought about ten Japanese language books

彼女はオーストラリアに3ヶ月くらいいました

*Kanojo wa osutoraria ni san kagetsu kurai imashita.*

She was in Australia for about three months

毎日時間くらいは勉強しなければならない

*Mainichi ichi jikan kurai wa benkyo shinakereba naranai*

One must study at least one hour every day

(*kurai + wa* means "at least")

2. After noun

だれもあなたくらい上手にテニスができません

*Dare mo anata kurai jozu ni tennis ga dekimasen.*

Nobody can play tennis as well as you

それができるのはあなたくらいです

*Sore ga dekiru no wa anata kurai desu*

You are the only one who can do it.

3. After demonstrative pronoun

それくらい私でもわかります。

*Sore kurai watashi demo wakarimasu*

Even I can understand that much.

これくらいいい辞書は買ったほうがいい

*Kore kurai ii jisho wa katta ho ga ii*

It's better to buy a dictionary as good as this one

4. After *dono*

これはどのくらいしますか。

*Kore wa dono kurai shimasu ka.*

How much does this cost?

駅までどのくらいかかりますか。

*Eki made dono kurai kakarimasu ka*

How long does it take to the station?

1週間にどのくらい喫茶店に行きますか

*Isshukan ni dono kurai kissaten ni ikimasu ka*

How often do you go to a coffee shop in a week?

5. After dictionary form of verb

この本は子供が読めるくらいやさしいです

*Kono hon wa kodomo ga yomeru kurai yasashii desu*

This book is easy enough for a child to read.

6. After *nai*-form of potential verb

今日はとても我慢できないくらい寒いです

*Kyo wa totemo gaman dekinai kurai samui desu.*

It is so cold today that I can't endure it (It is colder than I can endure today.)

もう歩けないくらい疲れた。

*Mo arukenai kurai tsukareta.*

I am tired to the extent that I can't walk any more (I am too tired to walk any more.)

→ See also *dono kurai, hodo*

**kureru** くれる

VERB MEANING: give (something), do (something) for, do a favor by doing (something), let (me) be satisfied with doing (something)

*Kureru* is used to express the “giving” of something to the speaker or to his/her family member. The first person is never the subject. *Kudasaru* may be substituted with persons of higher status or to whom the speaker wishes to show respect.

1. After object noun + *o*

彼女は私の誕生日に素敵なプレゼントをくれました。

*Kanojo wa watashi no tanjōbi ni suteki-na purezento o kuremashita.*

She gave me a nice present for my birthday

(the recipient can be 2nd person with a past tense verb or in a simple question)

彼は電話をくれましたか。

*Kare wa denwa o kuremashita ka*

Did he give you a call?

2. After *te*-form of verb

彼女がおいしい料理を作ってくれました。

*Kanojo ga oishii ryōri o tsukutte kuremashita*

She prepared a delicious dish for me.

だれが手伝ってくれましたか。

*Dare ga tetsudatte kuremashita ka.*

Who helped you?

ペンを貸してくれませんか。

*Pen o kashite kuremasen ka.*

Would you kindly lend me your pen?

先生がていねいに日本語を教えてくださいます

*Sensei ga teinei ni nihongo o oshiete kudasaimasu*

The teacher teaches me Japanese respectfully

(*kudasaru* shows respect toward the teacher)

→ See also *ageru*, *kudasai*, *morau*

**mada** まだ

ADVERB MEANING: still, yet

1. In affirmative statement or question

彼はまだ眠っています。

*Kare wa mada nemutte imasu.*

He is still sleeping.

私の言ったことをまだ覚えていますか

*Watashi no itta koto o mada oboete imasu ka*

Do you still remember what I said?

お父さんはまだお若いのですか。

*Otosan wa mada o wakai desu ka*

Is your father still young?

2. In negative sentence

彼女はまだここに来ていません。

*Kanojo wa mada koko ni kite imasen.*

She has not arrived here yet.

「もうできましたか」、「まだできません」

*"Mo dekimashita ka" "Mada dekimasen"*

"Have you finished yet?" "No, not yet."

▶ See also *mo*

**made** まで

PARTICLE MEANING: until, to, (from ) through, up to, as far as, before

1. After noun expressing temporal/spatial/quantitative limit

火曜日から土曜日まで旅行に行きます。

*Kayobi kara doyōbi made ryōko ni ikimasu.*

I'll be traveling from Tuesday through Saturday.

事務所は来週の水曜日まで閉まっています。

*Jimusho wa raishu no suiyobi made shimatte imasu*

The office is closed through next Wednesday

京都までの切符を2枚ください。

*Kyōto made no kippu o ni mai kudasai*

Give me two tickets for Kyoto, please

東京まで新幹線で行きます

*Tokyo made shinkansen de ikimasu*

I'm going as far as Tokyo on the shinkansen

25ページまで読んでください。

*Ni jū go pēji made yonde kudasai*

Please read up to page twenty five

この車は5人まで乗れます。

*Kono kuruma wa go nin made noremasu*

This car can hold up to five persons.

## 2. After dictionary form of verb

雨かやむまで喫茶店で休みましょう

*Ame ga yamu made kissaten de yasunimasho*

Let's take a rest in the coffee shop until it stops raining.

次の電車来るまで15分ある

*Tsugi no densha ga kuru made ju go fun aru*

There are fifteen minutes until the next train comes

▶ See also *kara*, *made ni*

## **made ni** までに

PARTICLE MEANING by (the time when . . .), before

### 1 After noun expressing time (limit)



今週の終わるまでにこの仕事を終えなければなりません。

*Konshu no owari made ni kono shigoto o oenakereba narimasen*

I have to finish this work by the end of this week

2 After dictionary form of verb

彼女が来るまでに用意しておきましょう

*Kunojo ga kuru made ni yoi shite okimasho.*

Let's be prepared by the time she comes.

→ See also *made*, *mae*

**mae** 前

NOUEN (of space or time) MEANING before, ago, previous, prior, last, former, in front of, forward

1. Used for telling time

今3時5分前です。

*Ima san ji go fun mae desu.*

It is five minutes to three o'clock

2 After noun expressing length/duration of or point in time

私は半年前に日本に来ました

*Watashi wa hantoshu mae ni nihon ni kimashita*

I came to Japan half a year ago.

マイクはポールが来る5分前に帰りました。

*Maiku wa Poru ga kuru go fun mae ni kaerimashita*

Mike went home five minutes before Paul came

1時前にここに帰ります。

*Ichiji mae ni koko ni modorimasu.*

I'll be back here before one

私は2ヶ月前からここで働いています

*Watashi wa ni kagetsu mae kara koko de hataraitte imasu*  
I've been working here since two months ago

3. Used as adverb, followed by *ni*

前にどこかで会ったことがありますか。

*Mae ni dokoka de atta koto ga arimasen ka*

Haven't we met somewhere before?

前に歩いてください。

*Mae ni aruite kudasai.*

Walk in front, please.

4. After dictionary form of verb, followed by *ni*

いつも寝る前にココアを飲みます

*Itsumo neru mae ni kokoa o nomimasu.*

I usually drink some cocoa before I go to bed.

私たちが着く前に電車が出た。

*Watashi tachi ga tsuku mae ni densha ga deta*

The train had left before we arrived.

5. After noun (positional) + *no*

湖の前にすてきなホテルがあります

*Mizuumi no mae ni suteki-na hōteru ga arimasu.*

There is a nice hotel in front of the lake

彼女の前でその話はやめよう。

*Kanojo no mae de sono hanashi wa yameyo.*

Let's stop talking about it in front of her.

6. Followed by *no* + noun

前の総理大臣はだれでしたか。

*Mae no sōri daijin wa dare deshita ka*

Who was the former Prime Minister?

鈴木さんの前の先生はだれでしたか

*Suzuki san no mae no sensei wa dare deshita ka*

Who was the teacher prior to Mr. Suzuki?

前の土曜日に泳ぎに行って来ました。

*Mae no doyobi ni oyogi ni itte kimashita*

I went swimming last Saturday.

そのことは前のページに書いてあります

*Sono koto wa mae no peji ni kaite arimasu*

That matter is written about on the previous page

トイレは前の車両にあります。

*Toire wa mae no sharyō ni arimasu.*

The restroom is in the front car (of the train)

▶ See also *ato de, de, ni, no, uchi ni*

## marude まるで

CONJUNCTION OR ADVERB MEANING: entirely, (not) at all

When used together with *yō* or *mitai*, *marude* means “as if” or “as though.”

### 1. Used with *yō*

(*yō* usually follows a clause + *ka no*)

彼はまるで何も知らないかのように話す

*Kare wa marude nani mo shiranai ka no yō ni hanasu*

He talks as if he knows nothing at all

### 2. Used with *mitai*

まるであなたがそれをしたみたいだ。

*Marude anata ga sore o shita mitai da.*

It sounds as though you had done it yourself

### 3. Used as adverb

ここに書いてあることはまるで話にならない。

*Koko ni kaite aru koto wa marude hanashi ni naranai.*

What is written here is not at all worthy of discussion.

その文の意味がまるでわかりません

*Sono bun no imi ga **marude** wakarimasen*

I don't understand the meaning of the sentence at all

▶ See also *matteku*, *mutai*, *yo. yo desu*, *zenzen*

**masen**    ません

▶ See *masu*

**mushō**    ましょう

▶ See *masu*

**masu**    ます

AUXILIARY VERB expressing politeness

A verb that ends a sentence is usually followed by this auxiliary, while a verb that ends a relative or noun clause is not

The *masu*-form usually expresses definite future actions or events, the speaker's intentions, present habitual actions, or potential actions. The progressive form with *masu* expresses continuing actions or states. *Masu* follows the conjunctive form of verbs

*Masu* has the following forms

Non-past negative form:    *masen*

Past affirmative form:    *mashita*

Past negative form    *masen deshita*

Volitional form:    *mashe*

1. Expressing future action/event

私は明日新幹線で京都に行きます

*Watashi wa ashita shinkansen de kyoto ni ikimasu.*

I will go to Kyoto by shinkansen tomorrow.

彼女はいっしょに旅行には行きません。

*Kanojo wa isshoni ryoko ni wa ikimasen.*

She is not going with me on the trip

閉会式は10時より行われます

*Heikaishiki wa juji yori okonawaremasu.*

The closing ceremony will be held from ten

2. Expressing speaker's intention

あとで電話します。

*Ato de denwa shimasu.*

I'll call you later.

3. Expressing habitual action

私は毎朝ごはんのみそ汁を食べます

*Watashi wa mai asa gohan to miso shiru o tabemasu.*

I eat rice and miso soup every morning.

私はあまりタバコを吸いません

*Watashi wa amari tabako o suimasen.*

I don't smoke much.

4. Expressing continuing action or state of being

彼女は今あそこで新聞を読んでいます

*Kanojo wa ima asoko de shinbun o yonde imasu.*

She is now reading a newspaper over there

私はとてもおなかがすいています。

*Watashi wa totemo onaka ga suite imasu*

I am very hungry.

彼はもうその会社では働いていません

*Kare wa mo sono kaisha dewa hataraitte imasen*

He is not working at that company any more

5. Expressing present condition

このホテルは景色がよく見えます

*Kono hōteru wa keshiki ga yoku miemasu*

We have a good view from this hotel

6. Expressing past/perfect action

私はきのう図書館でマイクに会いました

*Watashi wa kīno toshokan de maiku ni aimashita.*

I met Mike in the library yesterday

もうその本は読みましたか。

*Mō sono hon wa yomimashita ka.*

Have you read that book yet?

7. Expressing volition

いっしょにおいしい料理を食へましょう

*Issho ni oishii ryōri o tabemashō*

Let's eat some good food together

8. Expressing suggestion

窓を閉めましょうか。

*Mado o shimemashō ka*

Shall I shut the window?

9. Expressing invitation

お茶でもいっしょに飲みませんか

*Ocha demo issho ni nomimasen ka*

Would you have tea (or something) with me?

- ▶ See also *arimasen*, *temasu*, Polite Language (II), Verb Forms (II)

**mattaku** まったく

ADVERB MEANING quite, completely, really, indeed, (not) at all, (not) in the least

1. In affirmative sentence

まったく驚きました。

*Mattaku odorokimashita.*

I was really surprised.

まったくそのとおりです。

*Mattaku sono tori desu*

You're quite right

2. In negative sentence

彼はまったく信用できません。

*Kare wa mattaku shin'yo dekimasen.*

He is not at all trustworthy.

それが何かまったくわかりません

*Sore ga nan ka mattaku wakarimasen.*

I don't have the faintest idea what it is.

→ See also *marude*, *zenzen*

**metta ni** めったに

ADVERB (used with a negative) MEANING seldom, rarely, (not) very often

1. In negative sentence

私はめったに飲みに行きません

110 • GRAMMATICAL FUNCTION WORDS

*Watashi wa metta ni nomu ni ikimasen*

I rarely go out for a drink

彼女とはめったに会いません。

*Kanojo to wa metta ni aimasen*

I don't see her very often

→ See also *amari*, *hotondo*

**mitai** みたい (1)

ADJECTIVE MEANING: would like to (do), feel like (doing), feel inclined to (do)

1. After *te*-form of verb

いつか外国に行ってみたい。

*Itsuka gaikoku ni itte mitai.*

I'd like to travel abroad some day

海でひと泳ぎしてみたい。

*Umi de hito oyogi shite mitai.*

I feel like a swim in the sea.

→ See also *tai*

**mitai** みたい (2)

NOUN MEANING: like , seem to, look like

In the same manner as adjectival nouns, *mitai* is followed by *da/*  
*desu* or *na/ni*

1. After (adjectival) noun



あなたみたいに日本語が話せません。

*Anata mitai ni nihongo ga hanasemasen.*

I can't speak Japanese like you.

彼は先生みたいです。

*Kare wa sensei mitai desu.*

He looks like a teacher.

彼は芸術家みたいな格好をしている

*Kare wa geijutsuka mitai-na kakko o shite iru.*

He is dressed just like an artist

2. After dictionary or *nai*-form of verb/adjective

彼女は疲れているみたいだ。

*Kanojo wa tsukarete iru mitai da*

She seems to be tired

彼女はすもうに興味がないみたいです

*Kanojo wa sumo ni kyomi ga nai mitai desu*

It looks like she is not interested in sumo wrestling

3. After *ta*-form of verb/adjective

彼は試験に合格したみたいです

*Kare wa shiken ni gokaku shita mitai desu*

He seems to have passed the exam

パーティーは楽しかったみたいです。

*Patu wa tanoshikatta mitai desu*

It seems that the party was fun.

▶ See also *marude*, *rashii*, *sô desu* (2), *vô*

mo も

PARTICLE MEANING 100, also, (not) either, as many/much/long as, no less than, both and , as well as, neither nor , (not) even, even if, any. . .

## 112 • GRAMMATICAL FUNCTION WORDS

*Mata* is sometimes added after *mo*. This simply means “too” or “also.”

### 1. After noun

私も相撲が好きです。

*Watashi mo sumo ga suki desu*

I like sumo, too.

「とてもおなかがすきました。」「私もです。」

“*Totemo onaka ga sukimashita*.” “*Watashi mo desu.*”

“I am very hungry.” “So am I.”

「納豆は好きではありません。」「私もです。」

“*Natto wa suki dewa arimasen*.” “*Watashi mo desu*.”

“I don’t like fermented soybeans.” “Neither do I.”

### 2. After noun, with negative verb

私も漢字は読めません。

*Watashi mo kanji wa yomemasen*

I can’t read kanji, either.

私は簡単な漢字もわかりません

*Watashi wa kantan-na kanji mo wakarimasen.*

I don’t know even simple kanji

### 3. After each of two nouns

私はひらがなもカタカナも覚えまった

*Watashi wa hiragana mo katakana mo oboemashita*

I learned both hiragana and katakana

### 4. After noun expressing length/quantity/cost

このジャケットは2万円もしました。

*Kono jaketto wa ni man en mo shimashita*

This jacket cost as much as twenty thousand yen

きのうは3時間も日本語を勉強しました。

*Kinō wa san jikan mo nihongo o benkyō shimashita*

I studied Japanese as long as three hours yesterday

5. After interrogative word (+ particle)

だれもここに来ませんでした。

*Dare mo koko ni kimasen deshita*

Nobody came here.

あしたはどこにも行きません。

*Ashita wa doko ni mo ikimasen*

I won't go anywhere tomorrow

## mō もう

ADVERB MEANING: already, yet, have already begun to (do), (not) any more, soon, by now, another, more

1. Used with past form of verb

もう仕事を終わりました。

*Mō shigoto o oemashita.*

I have already finished the work

「彼女はもう来ましたか」 いいえ、まだです

“*Kanojo wa mō kimashita ka*” “*Iie, mada desu*”

“Has she come yet?” “No, not yet”

もうできたんですか。

*Mō dekita n desu ka*

Have you finished it already?

2. In negative sentence

もう待てません。

*Mō matemasen.*

I can't wait any more.

# 114 • GRAMMATICAL FUNCTION WORDS

冷蔵庫にはもう何も食べるものがありません。

*Reizoko ni wa mō nani mo taberu mono ga arimasen.*

There is nothing more to eat in the refrigerator

## 3. Used with progressive form

マイクはもう到着しています。

*Maiku wa mō tochaku shite imasu.*

Mike has already arrived.

## 4. Used with progressive form + *desho*

(expressing assumptions about present actions)

山田さんはもう駅に着いているでしょう

*Yamada san wa mō eki ni tsuite iru deshō*

Mr. Yamada has probably arrived at the station by now

(*ta*-form of verb may replace the progressive form)

*Yamada-san wa mo eki ni tsuita desho*

## 5. Expressing length of time, used with *ni naru*

日本に来てもう3年になります。

*Nihon ni kite mō san nen ni narimasu.*

It has already been three years since I came to Japan.

## 6. In future sentence

彼女はもう準備ができるでしょう

*Kanojo wa mō junbi ga dekiru deshō.*

She will be ready soon.

もう夜中になります。

*Mō yonaka ni narimasu.*

It will soon be midnight.

## 7. Before number + counter

父はもう2、3日で帰ります。

*Chichi wa mo ni san nichi de kaerimasu*

My father will be back in another two or three days.

もう1度見に行きたいですね。

*Mō ichido mi ni ikitai desu ne.*

I want to go and see it again.

もう1杯コーヒーを飲みたいです。

*Mō ippai kōhī o nomitai desu.*

I'd like to have another cup of coffee

→ See also *mada*

**mono** もの (物、者)

NOUN MEANING: thing/one which . . . , person, (one's) belongings, what . . . , would often, it is common that . . . , generally tend to (do), indeed

Unlike *koto*, the object expressed by *mono* must be a concrete inanimate object.

# 1. Used as noun

物をもっと大切にしてください。

*Mono o motto taisetsu ni shite kudasai.*

Please handle the things more carefully

私は伊藤という者です。

*Watashi wa itō to iu mono desu.*

I am a person called Ito. (My name is Ito )

(using *mono* to refer to oneself is humble)

# 2. After pronoun/name + no

「この傘はあなたのものですか」 いいえ、ジョンのものです。」

“Kono kasa wa *anata no mono* desu ka.” “Iie, *jon no mono* desu.”

“Is this umbrella yours?” “No, it's John's.”

{*mono* may be dropped after the possessive *no*}

3 After dictionary form of verb/adjective

彼女が買う物はブランドものばかりだ

*Kanojo ga kau mono wa burando mono bakari da*

The things she buys are all top-brand articles.

私が今欲しい物はビデオカメラです

*Watashi ga ima hoshii mono wa bideo kamera desu*

What I want now is a video camera

4 After *ta*-form of verb/adjective

あなたのテープレコーダーは私が買った物よりいいですね。

*Anata no tepu rekoda wa watashi ga katta mono yori ii desu ne*

Your tape recorder is better than the one I bought, isn't it?

5. Followed by *da/desu*

休暇を１ヶ月取ってみたいものです

*Kyuka o ikkagetsu totte mitai mono desu.*

I'd like to take a one-month vacation if possible.

だれでも新しい物に興味を持つものです

*Dare demo atarashii mono ni kyomi o motsu mono desu.*

Anybody tends to take an interest in new things

楽しい時間のたつのは早いものです

*Tanoshii jikan no tatsu no wa hayai mono desu*

Pleasant time passes quickly indeed

私はよくうちでパーティーを開いたものです

*Watashi wa yoku uchi de patii o hiraita mono desu*

I would often have parties at my house

→ See also *koto*, *no*

**morau もらう**

VERB MEANING get, be given, receive, have something (done), get (somebody) to (do something), get benefit (from somebody doing something)

The subject is usually the 1st person or his/her family members, but can also be the 2nd person in questions. The potential form, *moraeru*, is often used in questions. The respectful form, *itadaku*, or its potential form, *itadakeru*, is used instead of *morau* when receiving something from someone of higher status or to whom the speaker wishes to show respect

1. After object noun + o

アメリカにいる友人から手紙をもらいました。  
*Amerika ni iru yujin kara tegami o moraimashita*  
 I got a letter from my friend in America.  
 (kara may be replaced by ni)  
 「このカタログをもらえますか」「どうぞ」  
 “*Kono katarogu o moraemasu ka*” “*Dozo.*”  
 “Could I get this catalog?” “Sure”

2. After te-form of verb

友人からお金を貸してもらいました。  
*Yujin kara o kane o kashite moraimashita.*  
 I was lent some money by a friend.  
 先生に作文を見ていただきました。  
*Sensei ni sakubun o mite itadakimashita.*  
 I had my composition looked through by the teacher.  
 みんなに教室を掃除してもらいます

118 • GRAMMATICAL FUNCTION WORDS

*Minna ni kyoshitsu o soji shite moraimasu.*

I will get you all to clean the classroom

彼に手伝ってもらった。

*Kare ni tetsudatte moratta*

I got benefit from his helping me (He kindly helped me )

その本を見せてもらえますか。

*Sono hon o misete moraemasu ka*

Can I get you to show me the book?

(compare the above 1st person subject with the following 2nd person subject:)

*Sono hon o misete kuremasu ka*

Will you show me the book?

(the subject "you" does the favor for object "me")

3. Used with *tai*-form

彼にそれをしてもらいたいと思います

*Kare ni sore o shite moraitai to omoimasu*

I think I want to get him to do that

▶ See also *ageru, itadaku, kureru*

**moshi** もし

ADVERB MEANING: if, in case, when

It is used to stress the subjunctive when the action or state in the conditional clause is probable, improbable, unreal, or didn't happen. *Moshi + mo* is even more emphatic.

1 At the beginning of conditional clause

もし雨なら中止です。

*Moshi ame nara chushi desu*



In case of rain, it will be called off

もしもっとお金があればそれを買うのに

*Moshi motto o-kane ga areba sore o kau no ni*

If I had more money, I would buy it

もしあなたの助けがなかったらうまく行かなかっただろう。

*Moshi anata no tasuke ga nakattara umaku ikanakatta daro.*

If it had not been for your help, it probably would not have gone well.

→ See also *ba, nara, tara*

**mottomo** もっとも

ADVERB forming the superlative of adjective or adverb

It may be replaced with its informal equivalent *ichiban* (lit "number one").

1. Before adjective

これは今まで読んだうちでもっとも面白い本です

*Kore wa ima made yonda uchi de mottomo omoshiroi hon desu*

This is the most interesting book that I have ever read.

2. Before adverb

だれがもっとも上手に日本語が話せますか

*Dare ga mottomo jōzu ni nihongo ga hanaseimasu ka*

Who can speak Japanese the best?

3. Used with verb/adjective of emotion

私はこの絵がもっとも好きです。

*Watashi wa kono e ga mottomo suki desu*

I like this painting best.

→ See also *ichiban*

**na** な

PARTICLE MEANING: never (do), don't (do), how I wish

It also has the following functions: seeking agreement to the preceding statement, making exclamatory sentences, or making rude affirmative commands. When used with *yokumo* it means "how dare . . ."

1. After dictionary form of verb

そんなばかな事はするな。

*Sonna baka-na koto wa suru na.*

Don't do such stupid things.

(the negative command with *na* is not polite, however, putting *yo* after *na* makes it more friendly)

*Sonna baka-na koto wa suru na yo*

2. After *ta*-form of verb, with *yokumo*

よくもそんなことが言えたな。

*Yokumo sonna koto ga ieta na*

How dare you say such a thing?

3. After the plain copula *da*

(used only in informal speech)

あれはジョージの車だな。

*Are wa jōji no kuruma da na.*

That's George's car, isn't it?

4. After conjunctive form of verb

(rude affirmative command form)

早く来な。

*Hayaku kina.*

Hurry up and get over here!

5. After conditional clause

(the final *na* is prolonged)

もっとお金があればなあ。

*Motto o-kane ga areba nā.*

How I wish I had more money!

6. After dictionary form of verb/adjective

(informal and uses a prolonged *na*)

これは高いなあ。

*Kore wa takui nā.*

How expensive this is!

よく食べるなあ。

*Yoku taberu nā*

You eat a lot!

♦ See also *kudasai*, *nasai*

**nado** など

PARTICLE MEANING: and so on, etc., and the like, or something like that, things such as . . ., the likes of, (not) . . . absolutely

*Ya* is usually used in place of *to* between nouns before *nado*

1. After noun

私はよくコンビニでパンやケーキなどを買います。

*Watashi wa yoku konbini de pan ya keki nado o kaimasu*

I often buy bread, cakes, and so on at the convenience store.

私はよく景色などを描きます。

## 122 • GRAMMATICAL FUNCTION WORDS

*Watashi wa voku keshiki nado o egakimasu*

I often paint scenery and the like.

ゴルフなどはしますか。

*Gorufu nado wa shimasu ka.*

Do you play golf or anything like that?

### 2. Followed by *no* + noun

すしやさしみなどのなま物は食べられますか

*Sushi ya sashimi nado no namamono wa taberaremasu ka.*

Can you eat raw foods such as sushi, sashimi, and the like?

### 3. In negative sentence

パチンコなどはしません。

*Pachinko nado wa shimasen.*

I don't play things like pachinko

私などには無理です。

*Watashi nado ni wa muri desu*

It is impossible for the likes of me

## **nagara** ながら

PARTICLE MEANING while, as, although, in spite of

It is used to express the occurrence of two simultaneous or contrastive actions, both having the same subject

### 1. After conjunctive form of verb

いつもラジオを聞きながら眠ります

*Itsumo radio o kikinagara nemurimasu*

I usually fall asleep while listening to the radio.

喫茶店でコーヒーを飲みながら話しましょう

*Kissaten de kohi o nominagara hanashimasho.*

Let's talk over a cup of coffee in a coffee shop.

彼女は約束をしながらあまり守りません

*Kanojo wa yakusoku o **shinagara** amari namorimusen.*

Although she makes promises, she seldom keeps them.

2. After dictionary form of adjective

このコンピューターは小さいながらたくさん機能を持っている。

*Kono konpyuta wa chusai **nagara** takusan kina o motte iru.*

Though it is small, this computer has many functions

3. After adjectival noun

彼は病気ながらやってきました

*Kare wa **byoki nagara** yatte kimashita*

He came up in spite of illness.

▶ See also ga (2), keredotmo), no ni

**nal** ない

ADJECTIVE used as the negative of the verb *aru/da*, or for making the negative form of verb or adjective

It conjugates as an adjective.

*Tu-form* *nakatta* (plain)/*nakatta desu* (polite)

*Te-form* *naide* (after verb)/*nakute* (after adjective or after verb when expressing a cause for some emotion)

1. Used as negative of *aru*

ここに置いてあったかばんがない。

*Koko ni oite atta kaban ga **nai***

The bag I left sitting here is missing

遊ぶ時間がなくて不満だ

*Asobu jikan ga nakute fuman da.*

I am discontented because I have no time to play

2. Used as negative of *da*

これは日本製の車ではない。

*Kore wa nihonsei no kuruma dewa nai.*

This is not a Japanese-made car.

(*dewa* must be used between [adjectival] noun and *nai*)

3. Used to make *nai*-form of verb

(added to the stem of verb)

今パスポートをもっていない。

*Ima pasupoto o motte inai.*

I don't have my passport now.

もう電車に間に合わない。

*Mô densha ni ma ni awanai*

It's already too late to make the train

4. Used in *te*-form

ここでタバコは吸わないでほしい。

*Koko de tabako wa suwanaide hoshii*

I want you not to smoke here (I don't want you to smoke here)

努力しないで成功はしません。

*Doryoku shinaide seiko wa shimasen*

You won't succeed without making efforts

彼はお礼も言わないで帰ってしまった

*Kare wa o rei mo iwanaide kaette shimatta*

He went home without expressing thanks

彼女が来られなくて残念です。

*Kanojo ga korarenakute zannen desu*

It is a pity that she cannot come

5. After *ku*-form of adjective

このカメラは思ったほど高くはなかった。

*Kono kamera wa omotta hodo takaku wa nakatta*

This camera was not as expensive as I had expected.

(*wa* or *mo* used between *ku*-form and *nai* adds emphasis)

• See also *aru*, *arimasen*, *desu*, *masu*, *zu ni*, Verb Forms (II)

**nai uchi ni** ないうちに

PHRASE MEANING: before (an undesirable thing occurs)

Note that this phrase includes a negative form in Japanese, but becomes an affirmative expression in English translation.

1. After the stem of *nai*-form of verb

暗くならないうちに帰りましょう

*Kuraku naranai uchi ni kaerimashou.*

Let's go home before it gets dark

忘れないうちに彼女に電話しておこう

*Wasurenai uchi ni kanojo ni denwa shite okou.*

I'll call her before I forget.

→ See also *mae ni*, *uchi ni*

**nakereba ikenai** なければいけない

PREDICATIVE PHRASE (expressing obligation imposed by the speaker) MEANING: (you) must

*Nakereba* is the *ba* form of the negative adjective *nai*. It may be replaced with *nakutewa*, *nai to*, or the informal *nakya*

1. After the stem of *nai* form of verb

126 • GRAMMATICAL FUNCTION WORDS

もっと勉強しなければいけません

*Motto benkyo shinakereba ikemasen*

You must study harder.

「私も行かなければいけませんか」、「いえ、結構です」

“*Watashi mo ikanakereba ikemasen ka*” “*Ie, kekko desu.*”

“Do I have to go, too?” “No, you don’t need to.”

2. After *ku*-form of adjective

もっと軽くなければいけません。

*Motto karuku nakereba ikemasen*

It needs to be lighter.

3. After (adjectival) noun + *de*

老人にしんせつてなければいけません

*Rojin ni shinsetsu de nakereba ikemasen.*

You must be kind to old people

▶ See also *nakereba naranai*, *nakutemo yoi*

**nakereba naranai** なければならぬ

PREDICATIVE PHRASE (expressing obligation/necessity of the speaker) MEANING: have to

*Nakereba* may be replaced with *nakutewa* or the informal *nakya*

1 After the stem of *nai* form of verb

9時までに会社に行かなければなりません

*Ku ji made ni kaisha ni ikanakereba narimasen*

I have to go to the company by nine o'clock

もっと単語を覚えなければなりません

*Motto tango o oboenakereba narimasen.*



I have to learn more words.

2. After *ku*-form of adjective

アパートは駅にもっと近くなければならない

*Apato wa eki ni motto chikaku nakereba naranai.*

The apartment house needs to be much closer to the station.

3. After (adjectival) noun + *de*

話は論理的でなければならない。

*Hanashi wa ronriteki de nakereba naranai*

The speech needs to be logical.

➤ See also *nakereba ikenai*, *nakutemo yoi*, *neba naranai*

**nakutemo yoi** なくてもよい

PREDICATIVE PHRASE (expressing absence of obligation/necessity)

MEANING: need not, (not) have to

*Yoi* may be replaced by *ii*.

1. After the stem of *nai*-form of verb

そんなに急いでやらなくてもいいです

*Sonna ni isoide yaranakutemo ii desu*

You need not do it so hastily

電話をしてくれればわざわざ来なくてもよかったですよ

*Denwa o shite kurereba wazawaza konakutemo yokatta desu yo.*

If you had given me a call you need not have come all this way

これは書かなくてもよいですか。

*Kore wa kakanakutemo yoi desu ka.*

Is it all right if I don't write this?

2. After *ku*-form of adjective

128 • GRAMMATICAL FUNCTION WORDS

車は動けば新しくなくてもよいです

*Kuruma wa ugokeba atarashiku nakutemo yoi desu.*

As long as the car moves it needn't be new (The car needn't be new; it just has to run.)

3. After (adjectival) noun + *de*

返事は今日でなくてもいいです。

*Henji wa kyō de nakutemo ii desu.*

The answer does not need to be given today

説明は完全でなくてもよい。

*Setsumei wa kanzen de nakutemo yoi.*

The explanation does not need to be perfect

- ▶ See also *nakereba ikenai*, *nakereba naranai*, *neba naranai*, *temo*

**nan** なん

INTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVE MEANING what, how many, several, a few, many

*Nan* is a euphonically changed form of *nani* and is used to modify a noun

1. Followed by counter

「今何時ですか。」「2時15分です。」

*"Ima nan ji desu ka." "Ni ji ju go fun desu."*

"What time is it now?" "It's two fifteen."

終わるまで何分かかりますか。」「半時間です。」

*"Owaru made nan pun kakarimasu ka." "Han jikan desu."*

"How many minutes will it take to finish it?" "Half an hour."

外国に何回行ったことがありますか。

*Gaikoku ni nan kai itta koto ga arimasu ka.*

How many times have you been abroad?

2. Followed by counter + *ka*

やっと何人か来ました。

*Yatto nan nin ka kimashita.*

Some people have finally come

ジェーンには何日か前に会いました

*Jen ni wa nan nichi ka mae ni aimashita*

I saw Jane a few days ago.

3. Followed by (number +) counter + *mo*

私は何十冊も本を買いました

*Watashi wa nan jussatsu mo hon o kaumashita*

I bought dozens of books.

外国語を覚えるのに何年もかかります

*Gaikokugo o oboeru no ni nan nen mo kakarimasu.*

It takes many years to master a foreign language.

4. Followed by *no* + noun

何の音楽が好きですか。

*Nan no ongaku ga suki desu ka.*

What (kind of) music do you like?

→ See also *nan*

## **nan** 何

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN MEANING: what

1. Used as subject

この袋には何が入っていますか。

*Kono fukuro ni wa nani ga haite imasu ka*

What is in this bag?

2. Used as object

デパートで何を買うんですか。

*Deputo de nani o kau n desu ka*

What are you going to buy in the department store?

いま何がいちばん欲しいですか。

*Ima nani ga ichiban hoshii desu ka*

What do you want most now?

何を話しているんですか。

*Nani o hanashite iru n desu ka*

What are you talking about?

3. Used for describing subject

将来何になりたいのですか。

*Shourai nani ni naritai no desu ka*

What do you want to be in the future?

▶ See also *nan*

**nara** なら

PARTICLE MEANING if, supposing , on condition that ., as for

1. After (adjectival) noun in conditional clause

明日雨ならば延期します。

*Ashita ame naraba enki shimasu.*

If it is rainy tomorrow, we will postpone it

(*nara* derives from the conditional form of the copula *da* and may be followed by the conditional particle *ba*)

彼が病気ならば仕方ありません。

*Kare ga byoki naraba shikata ga arimasen*

If he is ill, there is nothing we can do about it.

遊園地ならデイズニ フンドがいい

*Yūenchi nara dizonurando ga ii.*

As for amusement parks, Disneyland is nice.

2. After *sore*

それならなぜやめないんですか。

*Sore nara naze yamenai n desu ka*

If that's the case, why don't you stop?

3. After subject

私ならそんなものは買いません

*Watashi nara sonna mono wa kaimasen.*

If it were me, I would not buy such a thing

彼女なら喜んでしてくれるでしょう

*Kanojo nara yorokonde shite kureru desho.*

Certainly she'd be happy to do it for you.

4. After object

お金なら要りません。

*O-kane nara irimasen.*

If it's money (you're offering), I don't need it

英語なら話せます。

*Eigo nara hanasemasu.*

If it's English (you need), I can speak it.

5. After particle

来週までならでき上がります

*Raishū made nara dekiagarimasu.*

I will be able to complete it by next week (if you let me do it)

6. After dictionary form of verb/adjective + *no/n*

ちゃんと返してくれるのなら貸してあげましょう。

*Chanto kaeshite kureru no nara kashite agemashō*

On condition that you return it to me without fail, I will lend it to you.

そんなに安いなら買います。

132 • GRAMMATICAL FUNCTION WORDS

*Sonna ni yasui n nara kaimasu*

If it is so cheap, I'll buy it

- 7 After *nai*-form of verb/adjective + *no/n*

あなたができないのなら私がしましょう

*Anata ga dekinai no nara watashi ga shimashō.*

If you cannot do it, I will do it for you

- 8 After *ta* form of verb/adjective + *no/n*

欲しかったのなら、ってくれればよかったの、

*Hoshikatta no nara itte kurereba yokatta no ni*

If you wanted it, you should have told me

→ See also *ba*, *tara*, *to*, *to sureba*

**naru** なる

VERB MEANING become, get, turn, come (grow) to, learn to

*Naru* is used with a word that describes the subject

1. After (adjectival) noun + *ni*

兄は高校教師になりました。

*Ani wa koko kyōshi ni narimashita*

My big brother became a high school teacher

私はデザイナーになりたいです。

*Watashi wa dezaina ni naritai desu*

I want to be a designer.

よく休みなさい、そうしないと病気になるですよ

*Yoku yasumi nasai sō shinai to byōki ni narimasu yo*

Sleep well if you don't you'll become sick

実際に見れば私撲が好きになりますよ

*Jissai ni mireba sumo ga suki ni narimasu yo*

If you actually watch sumo, you'll grow to like it

2. After *ku*-form of adjective

外はもう暗くなりました。

*Soto wa mo kuraku narimashita*

It has already grown dark outside

彼女はそれを見て青くなった。

*Kanojo wa sore o mite aoku natta.*

She saw it and turned pale

いつから彼女と会わなくなったのですか

*Itsu kara kanojo to awanaku natta no desu ka.*

Since when did you stop meeting her?

3 After dictionary form of verb + *yo ni*

私は日本語がわかるようになりました

*Watashi wa nihongo ga wakaru yō ni narimashita*

I have come to understand the Japanese language

最近よく酒を飲むようになった

*Saikin yoku sake o nomu yō ni natta.*

I've come to drink a lot recently.

ギターが弾けるようになりました

*Gita ga hikeru yō ni narimashita*

I came to be able to play the guitar. (I learned to play the guitar.)

▶ See also *yō ni*, Polite Language (II)

**nasai** なさい

AUXILIARY VERB used for making a strong, emphatic, or rude command form

## 134 • GRAMMATICAL FUNCTION WORDS

The standard negative command form is made by adding *na* to the dictionary form of the verb. It is safer to use *nasai* only toward children. Adding *yo* after *nasai* will soften the tone, however.

### 1. After conjunctive form of verb

答を紙に書きなさい。

*Kotae o kami ni kakinasai.*

Write your answers on the paper.

早くしなさい。

*Hayaku shinasai.*

Hurry up and do it.

→ See also *kudasai, na*

## **naze** なぜ

INTERROGATIVE ADVERB MEANING why

### 1. In a question

なぜ休んだのですか。 } かぜをひいたからです。 }

*"Naze yasunda no desu ka" "Kaze o huta kara desu"*

"Why were you absent?" "Because I caught a cold."

なぜ彼は来たのですか。

*Naze kare wa kita no desu ka*

Why did he come?

彼になぜ約束を破ったのかたずねましたか。

*Kare ni naze yakusoku o yabutta no ka tazunemashita ka*

Did you ask him why he broke his promise?

→ See also *dōshite, ka*



**nazenaraba . . . kara** なぜならば, から

CONJUNCTION MEANING (why?) because

*Desu* may be put after *kara* to end a sentence more politely, and the *ba* after *nazenara* may be dropped. The reason for the action is stated in the clause between *nazenaraba* and *kara*

1. With sentence inserted in the middle

彼は来ないでしょう。なぜならば行きたくないといってたからです。

*Kare wa konai desho; Nazenaraba ikitaku nai to itteta kara desu*

He may not come. (The reason why is) because he said he didn't want to come.

→ See also *kara*

**ne** ね

COLLOQUIAL PARTICLE used for requesting agreement or confirmation from the hearer, or for softening the tone of a statement

It may function as an English tag question or may be used after any word in a sentence in order to call the listener's attention to it

1. At the end of declarative sentence

「今日は天気がとてもいいですね。」「そうですね。」

"*Kyō wa tenki ga totemo ii desu ne.*" "So *desu ne*."

"The weather is very nice today, isn't it?" "Yes, it is."

136 • GRAMMATICAL FUNCTION WORDS

本田さんも行きますね。

*Honda-san mo ikimasu ne.*

You're going too, Mr. Honda, aren't you?

2. After *nasai/kudasai*

ぜひパーティーに来てくださいね。

*Zehi party ni kite kudasai ne.*

By all means please come to our party, OK?

3. After any elements of sentence

だからね、もっとねがんばってほしいんですよ

*Dakara ne, motto ne ganbatte hoshii n desu yo*

That's why, you know, I want you to work/study harder

→ See also *yo*

**neba naranai**    ねばならない

PREDICATIVE PHRASE (expressing obligation) MEANING: 'have to, must'

1. After the stem of *nai*-form of verb

もう行かねばなりません。

*Mo ikaneba narimasen*

I have to leave now.

若いうちはもっと仕事せねばなりません

*Wakai uchi wa motto shigoto seneba narimasen.*

You must work harder while you are young.

(this uses the antiquated form *se[neba]* instead of the more common stem *shi*)

→ See also *nakereba naranai*

## ni に

PARTICLE MEANING: at, in, on, for, from, to, toward, per, in order to (do), and

It also indicates the object of specific verbs, the indirect object, the agent in passive voice, the person who is caused to do something, a result describing the subject or object, or regret. Moreover, it makes adjectival nouns into adverbs (used only in modifying verbs).

## 1. After noun expressing time

「何時に電話をくれましたか。」「6時にしました。」

"*Nan ji ni denwa o kuremashita ka.*" "*Roku ji ni shimashita.*"

"(At) what time did you give me a call?" "I called at six."

来週の日曜日に京都へ行きます

*Raishū no nichiyōbi ni kyōto e ikimasu.*

I'll go to Kyoto (on) next Sunday

夏休みに外国へ行こうかと考えています。

*Natsu yasumi ni gaikoku e ikō ka to kangaete imasu.*

I'm thinking of going abroad for summer vacation

## 2. After noun expressing location/existence/state

(usually used with *iru/aru* except when expressing occurrence of an event)

「彼女は今どこにいますか。」「あそこにあります。」

"*Kanojo wa ima doko ni imasu ka.*" "*Asoko ni imasu.*"

"Where is she now?" "She is over there."

加藤さんは広島に住んでいます。

*Kato-san wa hirosshima ni sunde imasu*

138 • GRAMMATICAL FUNCTION WORDS

Mr. Kato lives in Hiroshima.

郵便局は図書館の左側にあります

*Yubinkyoku wa toshokan no hidari gawa ni arimasu*

The post office is to the left of the library

3. After noun expressing direction/destination

彼らは今朝飛行機でバンコクに向かいました

*Karera wa kesa hukoki de bankoku ni mukaimashita*

They left for Bangkok by plane this morning

私の別荘は海に面しています

*Watashi no besso wa umi ni menshite imasu*

My cottage faces the sea.

壁に変な虫がいる。

*Kabe ni hen-na mushi ga iru*

A strange insect is on the wall.

荷物は棚に置いてください。

*Nimotsu wa tana ni oite kudasai*

Please put your baggage on the shelf.

4. After noun expressing purpose

彼女はデパートへ買物に行きました

*Kanojo wa depato e kaimono ni ikimashita*

She went to the department store to shop

彼は香港へ旅行に行った

*Kare wa honkon e ryokō ni itta*

He has gone on a trip to Hong Kong

あなたは遊びにお金を使いすぎます

*Anata wa asobi ni o-kane o tsukaisugimasu*

You spend too much money on play

5. Between two nouns

私の好きな食べ物は魚に野菜です

*Watashi no suki-na tabemono wa sakana ni yasai desu.*

My favorite foods are fish and vegetables.

6. After conjunctive form of verb

(usually used with *iku* or *kuru*)

「映画を見に行きませんか。」 「いいですね。」

"*Eiga o mi ni ikimasen ka.*" "*Ii desu ne.*"

"Wouldn't you (like to) go and see a movie?" "That would be nice."

カメラを買いに来たんですが。

*Kamera o kai ni kita n desu ga*

I came to buy a camera, but . . . (will you help me?)

7. After object of verb

さっき本屋でトムに会いました。

*Sakki hon'ya de tomu ni aimashita*

I met Tom at a bookstore a while ago

この質問に答えてください。

*Kono shitsumon ni kotaete kudasai*

Please answer this question

彼女にもう電話しましたか。

*Kanojo ni mo denwa shamashita ka*

Have you called her yet?

この作品は独創性に欠ける

*Kono sakuhin wa dokusôryoku ni kakeru.*

This work lacks originality.

8. After indirect object expressing a recipient

私は彼にあの本をあげました。

*Watashi wa kare ni ano hon o agemashita*

I gave him that book.

毎週フランクに日本語を教えています。

*Maishû furanku ni nihongo o oshiete imasu*

I teach Frank Japanese every week.

140 • GRAMMATICAL FUNCTION WORDS

- 9 After agent in passive sentence  
 犬が車にはねられた。  
*Inu ga kuruma ni hanerareta*  
 A dog was hit by a car.
- 10 After noun expressing giver, followed by *morau*  
 この絵はがきは神田さんにもらいました  
*Kono ehagaki wa kanda-san ni moraimashita.*  
 I got this picture postcard from Ms. Kanda
- 11 After the agent in the pattern *te-morau*  
 その仕事は彼に手伝ってもらった  
*Sono shigoto wa kare ni tetsudatte moratta.*  
 I got him to help me with the work
- 12 After noun expressing person who is let/made to do something in a causative sentence  
 私にそれを説明させて下さい。  
*Watashi ni sore o setsumei sasete kudasai*  
 Please let me explain it.
- 13 After (adjectival) noun describing the subject  
 彼は働きすぎて病気になる  
*Kare wa hatarakisugite byōki ni natta*  
 He overworked and became ill.  
 私は建築家になりたいです。  
*Watashi wa kenchikuka ni naritai desu*  
 I want to be an architect.
- 14 After noun describing the object of verb  
 この小麦粉はクッキーにします。  
*Kono komugiko wa kukkii ni shimasu.*  
 I'll make this flour into cookies.  
 このお金をドルに換えてください。  
*Kono o-kane o doru ni kaete kudasai*

Please change this money into dollars.

15. After noun expressing opportunity/occasion

子供の誕生日にファミコンを買ってやった。

*Kodomo no tanjōbi ni famikon o katie yatta*

I bought my child a computer video game for her birthday

16. After noun expressing length/quantity

ミーティングは年に3回開かれる。

*Mittingu wa nen ni san kai hirakareru.*

The meeting is held three times per year.

3人に一人が試験に合格した。

*San nin ni hitori ga shiken ni gokaku shita.*

One person out of three passed the examination

17. After noun expressing a field of interest/ability

私はクラシック音楽に興味があります

*Watashi wa kurashikku ongaku ni kyōmi ga arimasu.*

I have an interest in classical music

18. After noun expressing reason/cause for a mental state

彼の話には飽きてしまいました

*Kare no hanashi ni wa akite shimaimashita*

I completely tired of his talk.

19. After noun expressing criterion for comparison/judgment

外国に比べると日本人はよく働くと言われる。

*Gaikoku ni kuraberu to nihonjin wa yoku hataraku to iwareru.*

It is said that the Japanese work hard compared with (people of) foreign countries.

この日本語の本は一年生にはむずかしすぎる。

*Kono nihongo no hon wa ichinensei ni wa muzukashi sugiru*

This Japanese book is too difficult for first year students.

20. After *darō/desho* to express regret

142 • GRAMMATICAL FUNCTION WORDS

あきらめなければうまく行くでしょうに。

*Akiramenakereba umaku iku deshō ni*

If you don't give up, it will go well

21 Used as suffix to change adjectival noun into adverbial

彼ならそれは楽にできます。

*Kare nara sore wa raku ni dekimasu*

He can do it easily (I assure you)

彼女は積極的に手伝ってくれます

*Kanojo wa sekkyoku teki ni tetsudatte kuremasu.*

She will enthusiastically help us.

- See also *de, e, tame, to, to ka*, Adjectival Nouns (II)

**ni chigai nai** にちがいない

PREDICATIVE PHRASE (indicating definite deduction) MEANING: must, must have (done)

It conjugates as an adjective.

1 After dictionary form of verb/adjective

彼女はこの辺に住んでいるにちがいない

*Kanojo wa kono hen ni sunde iru ni chigai nai*

She surely must be living around here.

鈴木さんはもう来ているにちがいありません

*Suzuki-san wa mō kite iru ni chigai arimasen.*

Mr. Suzuki must have already arrived.

お母さんは悲しいにちがいありません。

*Okāsan wa kanashii ni chigai arimasen*

Your mother must be sad.

2 After *nai* form of verb/adjective



彼女は二度と手伝ってくれないにちがいない。  
*Kanojo wa ni do to tetsudatte kurenai ni chigai nai.*  
 It is certain that she will not help us again

3 After *ta*-form of verb/adjective

彼はあきらめたにちがいありません。  
*Kare wa akirameta ni chigai arimasen*  
 He must have given up.

あの車は高かったにちがいない。  
*Ano kuruma wa takakatta ni chigai nai.*  
 That car must have been expensive.

4. After (adjectival) noun

このかばんはトムのかばんにちがいない。  
*Kono kaban wa tomu no kaban ni chigai nai.*  
 This bag must be Tom's.

ティムは病気にちがいありません。  
*Timu wa byōki ni chigai arimasen.*  
 Tim is definitely sick

ni kakete にかけて

ADVERBIAL PHRASE MEANING. (extending) to/over, in the . . . district

1. After noun

夏から秋にかけて台風がよく来ます。  
*Natsu kara aki ni kakete taifu ga yoku kimasu.*  
 Typhoons often come (in the period) from summer to autumn.  
 週末にかけて天気がよくなるでしょう。  
*Shūmatsu ni kakete tenki ga yoku naru desho.*  
 The weather will probably be good over the weekend.  
 北陸から関西にかけて雨が降るでしょう。

*Hokuriku kara kansai ni kakete ame ga furu desho.*

It will be rainy (in the area) from Hokuriku to Kansai

# **ni kansuru** に関する

ADJECTIVAL PHRASE MEANING about, concerning, regarding, pertaining to

It is used in this form before a noun it modifies, and becomes *ni kanshite* when modifying a verb

## 1. Used as adjectival phrase

彼女の離婚に関するいろいろな噂がある

*Kanojo no rikon ni kansuru iroiro-na uwasa ga aru*

There are various rumors concerning her divorce.

宗教に関する本を探しています

*Shukyō ni kansuru hon o sagashite imasu.*

I am looking for books on religion

## 2. Used as adverbial phrase

そのことに関して何か言うことがありますか

*Sono koto ni kanshite nanika iu koto ga arimasu ka*

Regarding that matter, do you have anything to say?

この点に関して意見を述べてください

*Kono ten ni kanshite iken o nobete kudasai*

Please express your opinion on this point

# **nikui** にくい

ADJECTIVE MEANING. hard/difficult (to do), can not (do) easily

1 After conjunctive form of verb

箸は使いにくいですね。

*Hashi wa tsukainikui desu ne.*

Chopsticks are hard to use, aren't they?

彼女とは話しにくいです。

*Kanojo to wa hanashinikui desu*

She is difficult to talk with.

(follows the subject it describes)

覚えにくい漢字がたくさんあります

*Oboenikui kanji ga takusan arimasu.*

There are a lot of Chinese characters that are difficult to learn.

(precedes the object it modifies)

→ See also yasui

**ni mo kakawarazu** にもかかわらず

ADVERBIAL PHRASE (generally used in formal language) MEANING in spite of, although, for all . . . , after all . . . , in defiance of, nevertheless

1. After noun

ひどい雨にもかかわらず彼らは外で野球をした

*Hidoi ame ni mo kakawarazu karera wa soto de yakyū o shita*

They played baseball outside in spite of heavy rain

2 After dictionary form of verb/adjective

疲れているにもかかわらず彼は手伝ってくれました。

*Tsukarete iru ni mo kakawarazu kare wa tetsudatte kuremashita.*

Although he was tired, he helped me

彼女はお金があるにもかかわらず質素に暮らしている。

*Kanojo wa o-kane ga aru ni mo kakawarazu shisso ni kura-shite iru*

Although she has a lot of money, she lives simply

とても安いにもかかわらず彼はそれを買わなかった。

*Totemo yasui ni mo kakawarazu kare wa sore o kawanakatta*

Although it was very cheap, he didn't buy it.

3. After *nai*-form of verb/adjective

だれも行かないにもかかわらず彼は1人で行った

*Dare mo ikanai ni mo kakawarazu kare wa hitori de itta*

Nobody would go, so he went alone nevertheless

4. After *ta*-form of verb/adjective

忠告したにもかかわらず彼はまた同じミスをした

*Chukoku shita ni mo kakawarazu kare wa mata onaji misu o shita*

Although I advised him, he made the same mistake again.

天気がよかったにもかかわらず私は家にいました。

*Tenki ga yokatta ni mo kakawarazu watashi wa ie ni imashita.*

Though the weather was good, I stayed at home

5 At the beginning of sentence

それはほとんど不可能です にもかかわらずアレキサンダーはあきらめません。

*Sore wa hotondo fukano desu. Ni mo kakawarazu, arekisanda wa akiramemasen.*

It is almost impossible. Nevertheless, Alexander doesn't give up.

→ See also *keredo(mo)*

**ni oite** において

ADVERBIAL PHRASE (generally used in formal language) MEANING in, at, on, as for

It is used in this form when modifying a verb and becomes *ni okeru* before a noun it modifies.

1 After noun expressing location

7階の広間において歓迎会を行います

*Nana kai no hiroma ni oite kangeikai o okonaimasu.*

We will give a reception in the hall on the seventh floor

日本における技術革新はめまぐるしかった。

*Nihon ni okeru gyutsu kakushin wa memagurushikatta.*

The technological revolution in Japan has happened very rapidly.

2 After noun expressing criterion/domain

能力において彼は他の学生にまさります

*Nōryoku ni oite kare wa hoka no gakusei ni masarimasu.*

As for ability, he surpasses the other students

その品物は品質において問題がある

*Sono shinamono wa hinshitsu ni oite mondai ga aru*

As for quality, there are problems with these goods.

→ See also *de, ni*

**niotte** に沿って

ADVERBIAL PHRASE MEANING: along, parallel to, in accordance with

1. After noun

通りに沿ってたくさん店があります

*Tôri ni sotto takusan mise ga arimasu*

There are a lot of stores along the street.

この線路は国道に沿って走っている

*Kono senro wa kokudô ni sotto hashitte iru.*

This railroad runs parallel to the national highway

彼は上司の方針に沿ってそれを実行した

*Kare wa jushi no hoshin ni sotto sore o jikko shita.*

He carried it out in accordance with his boss's policy

(*ni shitagatte* may replace *ni sotto* here)

**ni taishite** に対して

ADVERBIAL PHRASE MEANING toward, to (in connection with), against, in regard to, whereas, in contrast to

It becomes *ni taishite* when used as an adjectival phrase

1. After noun

この問題に対して質問がありますか

*Kono mondai ni taishite shitsumon ga arimasu ka*

Do you have any questions in regard to this problem?

生徒たちは先生に対してすなおな態度をとります

*Seito tachi wa sensei ni taishite sunao na taido o torimasu*

The students take an obedient attitude toward the teachers.

私は彼女に対して好意を持っています

*Watashi wa kanojo ni taishite koi o motte imasu*

I feel affection toward her.

私は他人のプライバシーに対して関心を持たない。

*Watashi wa tanin no puraibashii ni taishite kanshin o motanai*

I have no interest in other people's private matters.

彼は私に対して恨みを持っているようです。

*Kare wa watashi ni taishite urami o motte iru yō desu*

He seems to have a grudge against me

5人に対して1台コンピューターがあります。

*Go nin ni taishite ichi dai konpyuta ga arimasu.*

There is one computer to every five persons.

2. After dictionary or *ta*-form of verb/adjective + *no*

空が青いのにに対して山は赤だった

*Sora ga aoi no ni taishite yama wa aka datta*

In contrast to the blue sky was the red mountain.

与党がそれに賛成したのに対して野党は反対した

*Yoto ga sore ni vansai shita no ni taishite yato wa hantai shita*

The ruling party supported it, whereas the opposition parties were against it.

3. After (adjectival) noun + *na* + *no*

彼は弱い者には親切なのに対して強い者には冷たい

*Kare wa yowai mono ni wa shinsetsu-na no ni taishite tsuyoi mono ni wa tsumetai.*

He is kind toward the weak, whereas he is cool toward the strong.

4. Used as adjectival phrase

これが質問に対する答です。

*Kore ga shitsumon ni taisuru kotae desu.*

This is the answer to the question

- See also *ni, ni kansuru*

150 • GRAMMATICAL FUNCTION WORDS

**ni totte** にとって

PHRASE MEANING. to, as far as . . . concerned, for

1. After personal pronoun/noun

それは私にとって問題ではありません

*Sore wa watashi ni totte mondai dewa arimasen*

As far as I'm concerned that is not a problem

あなたにとって日本語を覚えることはむずかしいですか。

*Anata ni totte nihongo o oboeru koto wa muzukashii desu ka*

Is it difficult for you to learn Japanese?

それは彼女にとって不都合なのですか

*Sore wa kanojo ni totte futsugo-na no desu ka.*

Is it inconvenient for her?

**ni tsuite** について

ADVERBIAL PHRASE MEANING about, concerning, in regard to, as to/  
for, of

It becomes *ni tsuite no* when modifying a noun.

1. After noun

だれのことについて話しているんですか。

*Dare no koto ni tsuite hanashite iru n desu ka*

Who are you talking about?

その件についてまったく賛成です

*Sono ken ni tsuite mattaku sansei desu*

I quite agree with you concerning that matter

日本語教育についてたくさん問題がある。

*Nihongo kyōiku ni tsuite takusan mondai ga aru*



There are many problems with Japanese language education

日本の政治についてどう思いますか

*Nihon no seiji ni suite do omomasu ka.*

What do you think of Japanese politics?

2. Used as adjectival phrase

演劇についての資料はありませんでした。

*Engeki ni suite no shiryō wa arimasen deshita*

There was no data concerning theater.

→ See also *ni kansuru, ni taishite*

**ni tsurete** につれて

CONJUNCTION MEANING: as (in consequence of some change)

1. After dictionary form of verb

彼は年をとるにつれて、品々になった

*Kare wa toshi o toru ni tsurete onko ni natta*

As he grew older, he became gentler

年がたつにつれて生活は楽になって来ました

*Toshi ga tatsu ni tsurete seikatsu wa raku ni natte kimashita*

As the years go by, my life has become (more and more) comfortable.

**ni yoreba** によれば

ADVERBIAL PHRASE MEANING: 'according to, from

It can be replaced with *ni yoru to*.

1. After noun

## 152 • GRAMMATICAL FUNCTION WORDS

テレビのニュースによれば阿蘇山で大きな噴火があったらしい。

*Terebi no nyusu ni yoreba aso-zan de oki na funku ga atta rashii*

According to the television news, it seems there was a big eruption at Mt. Aso.

聞くところによれば彼女は結婚するそうです。

*Kiku tokoro ni yoreba kanojo wa kekkon suru so desu.*

From what I've heard, she is going to get married

天気予報によれば明日は雨です。

*Tenki yohō ni yoreba ashita wa ame desu.*

According to the weather forecast, it will be rainy tomorrow

### **ni yotte** によって

ADVERBIAL PHRASE MEANING by (an agent), because of, due to, by means of, according to

Note that it takes a passive verb. It can be replaced with the more formal *ni yori*, and becomes *ni yoru* (which does not take a passive verb) before a noun it modifies

#### 1. After noun

その小説は夏目漱石によって書かれた。

*Sono shosetsu wa natsume soseki ni yotte kakareta*

The novel was written by Soseki Natsume

職場での喫煙は規則によって禁止されています。

*Shokuba de no kutsuen wa kisoku ni yotte kinshi sarete imasu.*

Smoking at the office is prohibited by regulation

試合は大雨によって中止された。

*Shiai wa ôame ni yotte chushi sareta*

The game was called off due to a heavy rain

デモは武力によって鎮圧された。

*Demo wa buryoku ni yotte chin'atsu sareta*

The demonstration was quelled by means of force

2. Used in adjectival phrase

彼による話は信じがたい。

*Kare ni yoru hanashi wa shinjigatai*

Talk from him is hard to believe. (What he says is difficult to believe.)

→ See also *de*, *o toshite*, *tame ni*

**ni wa** には

DOUBLE PARTICLE MEANING, for (in regard to), in order to

It is usually used before a predicate that expresses state, degree, quality, evaluation, etc.

1. After noun

この服は子供には大きすぎます。

*Kono fuku wa kodomo ni wa okisugimasu*

This dress is too big for my child

2. After dictionary form of verb

出かけるにはまだ早すぎます

*Dekakeru ni wa mada hayasugimasu*

It is still too early to go out.

外国を旅行するにはたくさんお金がかかる。

*Gaikoku o ryokô suru ni wa takusan o-kane ga kakaru.*

In order to travel abroad it takes a great deal of money.

## 154 • GRAMMATICAL FUNCTION WORDS

このパソコンは持ち運ぶにはたいへん便利です。

*Kono pasukon wa mochihakobu ni wa taihen benri desu*

This personal computer is very handy to carry

→ See also *no ni, tame ni, wa*

### **no** の

PARTICLE MEANING of, at, in, on, to, from, by, for, one's

It also makes adjectivals, indicates apposition, makes possessive adjectives or pronouns, nominalizes verbs and adjectives, and indicates the subject or object in a relative clause. Note that it comes only before nouns.

#### 1. After (adjectival) noun

東京は日本の首都です。

*Tokyo wa nihon no shuto desu*

Tokyo is the capital of Japan.

これはフランクのかばんと傘です。

*Kore wa furanku no kaban to kasa desu.*

These are Frank's bag and umbrella.

テレホンカードは売店の自動販売機で売っています。

*Terehon kado wa baiten no jido hanbaiki de utte imasu*

Telephone cards are sold at a vending machine at the stand.

午後の授業は休みます。

*Gogo no jugyo wa yasumimasu*

I will miss my afternoon classes.

日曜日の祭りは延期されました。

*Nichiyobi no matsuri wa enki saremashita.*

The festival on Sunday was postponed.

芥川龍之介の小説を読んだことがありますか。

*Akutagawa ryūnosuke no shosetsu o yonda koto ga arimasu ka.*

Have you ever read a novel by Ryunosuke Akutagawa?

事故で16歳の少年が死にました

*Jiko de jū roku sai no shonen ga shinimashita*

A sixteen-year-old boy was killed in the accident.

こちらが友人の田中です。(apposition)

*Kochira ga yujin no tanaka desu*

This is my friend Tanaka.

別の靴を見せてください。

*Betsu no kutsu o misete kudasai*

Please show me another pair of shoes.

2. After specific noun expressing position/space/time  
(often a noun + *no* + noun + *no* pattern)

ポケットの中のさいふを盗られました

*Poketto no naka no saifu o nusumaremashita*

I had the wallet in my pocket stolen.

机の上のかばんはだれのですか。

*Tsukue no ue no kaban wa dare no desu ka.*

Whose is the bag on the desk?

食事の後のデザートは何にしますか。

*Shokujī no ato no dezato wa nani ni shimasu ka*

What will you have for dessert after the meal?

3. After adverbial particle

(*E*, *kara*, *de*, and *made* are adverbial particles used before verbs. When a phrase using one of them is used to modify a noun, *no* must be put before the noun to link it with the preceding phrase.)

広島までの往復切符を1枚ください。

*Hiroshima made no ofuku kippu o ichi mai kudasai*

Please give me a round-trip ticket to Hiroshima.

彼女へのプレゼントは何がいいですか

*Kanojo e no purezento wa nani ga ii desu ka*

What is a good present for her?

#### 4. After adverbial phrase

(Like adverbial particles, when an adverbial phrase is used to modify a noun, *no* must be used to link the phrase with the noun. However, when the phrase ends in *ni*, like *no tame ni*, the *ni* is replaced with *no*.)

その件についてのあなたの意見は極端です

*Sono ken ni tsuite no anata no iken wa kyokutan desu.*

Your opinion concerning that matter is extreme

彼らのための援助は全く不要です

*Karera no tame no enjo wa mattaku fuyo desu.*

The aid for them is quite unnecessary

#### 5. After personal pronoun/name

(makes it possessive)

「これはあなたのかばんですか」 「いいえ、マイクのです」

*"Kore wa anata no kaban desu ka" "Iie, maiku no desu."*

"Is this your bag?" "No, it is Mike's."

#### 6. After interrogative pronoun

(makes it an interrogative adjective)

これはだれのバイクですか」 「私のです」

*"Kore wa dare no baiku desu ka" "Watashi no desu"*

"Whose motorbike is this?" "It's mine."

「あれは何の木ですか」 「さくらの木です」

*"Are wa nan no ki desu ka." "Sakura no ki desu"*

"What (kind of) trees are they?" "They are cherry trees."

どこの銀行に行けばいいですか。

*Doko no ginkō ni ikeba ii desu ka*

Which bank do I need to go to?

7. Used as indefinite pronoun

(after dictionary or *ta*-form of verb/adjective)

これがCDで、私が持っているのがレーザーディスクです。

*Kore ga shindū de, watashi ga motte iru no ga reza disuku desu*

This is a compact disc, and the one I have is a laser disc

このカメラは高すぎます。もっと安いのはありませんか

*Kono kamera wa takasugimasu. Motto yasui no wa arimasen ka.*

This camera is too expensive. Do you have any cheaper ones?

この方が私が買ったのよりいい。

*Kono ho ga watashi ga katta no yori ii.*

This is better than the one I bought

8. Used to make a nominal, or to change preceding clause into a noun clause

(after dictionary, *ta*-, or *nai*-form of verb/adjective)

漢字を覚えるのはとてもむずかしいです。

*Kanji o oboeru no wa totemo muzukashii desu.*

Memorizing Chinese characters is very difficult

タバコを吸うのをやめたいと思います

*Tabako o sū no o yametai to omoimasu.*

I'd like to stop smoking.

書類を持ってくるのを忘れました

*Shorui o motte kuru no o wasuremashita*

I forgot to bring the papers.

蒸し暑いのはいやですね。

*Mushiatsui no wa iya desu ne.*

Humidity is unpleasant, isn't it?

彼が事故で亡くなったのは事実です。

*Kare ga jiko de nakunatta no wa jitsu desu*

It is true that he was killed in an accident.

彼にそれができないのはおかしい。

*Kare ni sore ga dekinai no wa okashii.*

It is strange that he can't do that.

- 9 After subject in a relative clause  
(may be replaced by *ga*)

彼女の作った料理はとてもおいしいです。

*Kanojo no tsukutta ryori wa totemo oishii desu.*

The food she cooks is very delicious.

10. After object in a relative clause

コーヒーの欲しい人は、ってください

*Kôhii no hoshii hito wa itte kudasai*

Those who want coffee speak up, please

11. At the end of sentence (with rising intonation)  
(usually used by women and children)

いっしょに行きたくないの。

*Isshoni ikitaku nai no*

Don't you want to go together?

- \* See also *ga* (1), *koto*, *mono*, *ni tsuite*, *no desu tokoro*

**node** ので

PARTICLE MEANING because (of), on account of, as, since

The statement preceding *node* should be objective, whereas



*kara* is used to indicate the speaker's subjective judgement or insistence

1. After (adjectival) noun + *na*

今日は雨なので映画を見よう

*Kyō wa ame-na node eiga o miyou.*

I'll see a movie today since it is rainy

彼女は病気なので来られません。

*Kanojo wa byōki-na node koraremasen*

She is unable to come because she is sick

2. After dictionary form of verb/adjective

用事があるのでもう失礼します。

*Yoji ga aru node mo shitsurei shimasu.*

Since I have an engagement, I'll be leaving now

この本はおもしろいので勧めます

*Kono hon wa omoshiroi node susumemasu.*

I recommend this book to you because it is interesting.

(if *kara* replaced *node*, the reason would be "because I think the book is interesting")

3. After *nai* form of verb/adjective

彼女が行かないので私も行きません

*Kanojo ga ikanai node watashi mo ikimasen.*

Since she's not going, I won't go either

そんなに長くないので読むには余り時間がかかりません。

*Sonna ni nagakunai node yomu ni wa amari jikan ga kakarimasen*

It's not very long, so it won't take too long to read.

4. After *ta*-form of verb/adjective

雨が降っていたのでゴルフはやめました。

*Ame ga futte ita **node** gorufu wa yamemashita*

We stopped playing golf because it was raining

あのカメラは高かったので買いませんでした

*Ano kamera wa takakatta **node** kaimasen deshita*

I didn't buy that camera because it was expensive

→ See also *kara*

## no desu のです

PREDICATIVE PHRASE which stresses the preceding statement or softens the tone of a suggestion, request, or demand

*No desu* is often abbreviated to *n desu* in colloquial speech.

1. After dictionary form of verb/adjective

ちょっとたずねたいことがあるんですか。

*Chotto tazunetai koto ga aru **n desu** ga*

I have a small question that I want to ask you, but (can you help me?)

今とても忙しいんです。

*Ima totemo isogashii **n desu**.*

I am very busy now (so I can't help you).

2. After *ta*-form of verb/adjective

さっき彼女に電話したのですが、はませんでした。

*Sakki kanojo ni denwa shita **no desu** ga, demasen deshita.*

I telephoned her a little while ago, but she didn't answer.

(if preceded by a past-tense sentence, a contrary statement usually follows)

あの自転車は安かったのですが、お金が足りませんでした。

*Ano jitensha wa yasukatta no desu ga, o-kane ga tarimasen deshita.*

That bicycle was cheap, but I didn't have enough money

3 After *nai*-form of verb/adjective

次の休暇はどこにも行かないのですか。

*Tsugi no kyuka wa doko ni mo ikanai no desu ka.*

Won't you go anywhere during the next vacation?

4. After (adjectival) noun + *na/datta*

今日はとてもひまなんです。

*Kyô wa totemo hima-na n desu*

I am very free today (and am wondering what to do)

きのうはひまだったんですが、うちにいました

*Kino wa hima datta n desu ga, uchi ni imashita.*

I was free yesterday, but I stayed at home.

5. Used in question

(A question using this phrase is usually asking for some explanation, while a question without it may indicate a request or invitation. When interrogative words are used in questions, *no desu ka* usually comes at the end of the question to clearly indicate that some information is being asked for.)

どうしてここへ来たんですか。

*Doshite koko e kita n desu ka.*

Why (or how) did you come here?

テニスはするんですか。

*Tenisu wa suru n desu ka.*

Do you play tennis?

(compare with *Tenisu o shimsu ka*, meaning "Will you play tennis?")

お酒は飲まないんですか。

*O sake wa nomanai n desu ka.*

164 • GRAMMATICAL FUNCTION WORDS

4 After (adjectival) noun + *na/datta*

彼は元氣なのによく仕事をさぼります。

*Kare wa genki-na no ni yoku shigoto o saborimasu*

Though he is healthy, he often skips out of work

今日は雨なのにつりに行くんですか。

*Kyo wa ame-na no ni tsuri ni iku n desu ka*

Are you going fishing today in spite of the rain?

彼はまだ学生なのにたくさんお金を稼いでいます。

*Kare wa mada gakusei na no ni takusan o-kane o kasete imasu.*

He is making a lot of money though he is still a student

あの人は金持ちだったのに今は貧乏です

*Ano hito wa kanemochi datta no ni ima wa binbo desu*

Even though that person was rich, he is poor now.

5 After *ba/tara*-form of verb/adjective + *u/yokatta*

あなたもいっしょに来ればいいのに

*Anata mo issho ni kureba ii no ni*

I wish you would come with me (but you won't)

往復切符を買えば良かったのに

*Ôfuku kippu o karba yokatta no ni.*

You should have bought a round-trip ticket.

▶ See also *ga* (2), *keredo(mo)*, *tame ni*

0 を

PARTICLE EXPRESSING the direct object of a verb, the starting point of an action, a point of separation (from), a place where something or somebody is passing (through/along/in/across/over)

1. After direct object of verb

「何を買ったんですか。」「珍しい切手を買いました。」

*"Nani o katta n desu ka" "Mezurashii kitte o kaimashita."*

"What did you buy?" "I bought some unique stamps."

私は毎週1回トムに日本語を教えています。

*Watashi wa maishu ikkai tomu ni nihongo o oshiete imasu*

I teach Japanese to Tom once a week

彼女は私を田中君と呼びます

*Kanojo wa watashi o tanaka-kun to yobimasu*

She calls me Tanaka-kun.

どこかで財布を取られました。

*Dokoka de saifu o torare mashita.*

I had my wallet stolen somewhere.

みんなを驚かせよう。

*Minna o odorokaseyō.*

I'll surprise everybody.

夏休みを旅行して過ごしました。

*Natsu yasumi o ryoko shite sugoshimashita*

I spent my summer vacation traveling

2. After noun expressing place

今朝は8時に家を出ました。

*Kesa wa hachi ji ni ie o demashita.*

I left home at eight this morning

彼女はさっき部屋を出て行きました。

*Kanojo wa sakki heya o dete ikimashita.*

She went out of the room a short while ago.

新幹線はもう京都を通過しました。

*Shinkansen wa mo kyoto o tsuka shimashita*

166 • GRAMMATICAL FUNCTION WORDS

The shinkansen already passed through Kyoto

この通りをまっすぐに行ってください。

*Kono tōri o massugu ni itte kudasai*

Please go straight along this street.

2つめの角を右に曲がってください。

*Futatsume no kado o migi ni magatte kudasai*

Please turn right at the second corner.

→ See also *ga* (1), *kara*, *ni*, *to*, *wa*

**o motte** をもって

FORMAL ADVERBIAL MEANING by (means of), with

1. After noun

結果は書面をもって通知いたします

*Kekka wa shōmen o motte tsuchi itashimasu.*

I'll inform you of the result by letter

彼の能力をもってしても不可能でしょう

*Kare no nōryoku o motte shitemo fukano desho*

Even with his ability it will be impossible

→ See also *de*, *ni yotte*

**o toshite** を通して

FORMAL ADVERBIAL PHRASE MEANING through (some method)

1. After noun

私たちの調査を通していろいろなことがわかって来た。

*Watashi tachi no chōsa o toshite iroiro na koto ga wakutte kita.*

Through our investigation, various facts came to be known.

→ See also *ni yotte*

## oki ni おきに

PHRASE MEANING: at intervals of

### 1. After number + counter

私とうちで1日おきにお酒を飲みます

*Watashi wa uchi de ichi nichi oki ni o-sake o nomimasu*

I drink (alcohol) at home every other day.

この駅では普通電車は15分おきに出ます

*Kono eki de wa futsu densha wa jū go fun oki ni demasu.*

Local trains leave every fifteen minutes from this station

この用紙には1行おきに書いて下さい

*Kono yōshi ni wa ichi gyō oki ni kaite kudasai.*

Please write on every other line of this paper.

あの道路には5メートルおきに木が植えてあります

*Ano doro ni wa go mētoru oki ni ki ga uete arimasu.*

Trees are planted along that road at intervals of five meters.

## oru おる

FORMAL VERB that can be substituted for *iru*

The polite form, *orimasu*, is used to show humbleness on the

speaker's part, while the respectful form, *oraremasu*, is used to show respect to another.

1. Used for expressing existence

「山田さんはうちにおられますか。」「いいえ、今おりません。が。」

"Yamada-san wa uchi ni oraremasu ka" "Iie, ima orimasen ga."

"Is Mr. Yamada at home?" "No, he is out now."

(the question shows respect, and the response humbleness)

2. After *te*-form of verb

社長は今出かけております。

*Shacho wa ima dekakete orimasu.*

The boss is out now.

(speaking to another about one's own boss)

2時に入口で待っております。

*Ni ji ni iriguchi de matte orimasu*

I'll be waiting for you at two o'clock at the entrance

**rashii** らしい

ADJECTIVE MEANING I hear, seem to, be likely to, like

The supposition expressed by *rashii* is based on what the speaker has heard.

1. After (adjectival) noun

彼女は風邪らしいです。

*Kanojo wa kaze rashii desu*



I hear she has a cold

彼女は先週病気だったらしいです

*Kanojo wa senshu byōki datta rashii desu.*

I hear she was sick last week

(the past-tense verb must be placed before *rashii*)

そんなことをするのは彼女らしい。

*Sonna koto o suru no wa kanojo rashii.*

It is like her to do such a thing

この町には図書館らしい図書館はありません。

*Kono machi ni wa toshokan rashii toshokan wa arimasen*

There is no library-like library in this town.

2. After dictionary form of verb/adjective

天気予報によると明日は晴れるらしい。

*Tenki yoho ni yoru to ashita wa hareru rashii.*

According to the weather forecast, it is likely to be clear tomorrow.

3. After *nai*-form of verb/adjective

彼は肉は食べないらしい。

*Kare wa niku wa tabenai rashii.*

It seems that he doesn't eat meat.

彼はあまりよくないらしい。

*Kare wa amari yokunai rashii.*

It seems that he is not doing very well

4 After *ta*-form of verb/adjective

彼は先月ヨーロッパを旅行したらしい。

*Kare wa sengetsu yōroppa o ryokō shita rashii.*

I hear he traveled in Europe last month.

彼が買ったバイクは高かったらしい

*Kare ga katta baiku wa takakatta rashii.*

170 • GRAMMATICAL FUNCTION WORDS

I hear that that motorcycle he bought was expensive

→ See also *mitai*, *so desu*, *yo desu*

**shika** しか

PARTICLE (used with a negative) MEANING nothing/nobody/no-where but , no more than , no other than , only

Note that though a negative verb is used in Japanese, the English equivalent does not always require one

1. After subject/object

(used in place of the particle which indicates the subject/object)

洋子しか約束の時間に来なかった

*Yoko shika yakusoku no jikan ni konakatta*

Nobody but Yoko came at the appointed time.

マイクは野菜しか食べません。

*Maiku wa yasai shika tabemasen.*

Mike eats nothing but vegetables

2. After number + counter

東京には1回しか行ったことがありません。

*Tokyo ni wa ikkai shika itta koto ga arimasen*

I've only been to Tokyo once.

私は3人しか日本の友人がいません

*Watashi wa san nin shika nihon no yujin ga imasen.*

I have no more than three Japanese friends.

今2千円しかお金を持っていません

*Ima ni sen en shika o-kane o motte imasen.*

I only have two thousand yen now.

3. After particle

今日は6時にしか会えません。

*Kyo wa roku ji ni shika aemasen*

Today I can meet you at no other time except six.

ここからしか出られません。

*Koko kara shika deraremasen.*

You can go out only from here.

このタイプのラジオはあの店でしか売っていません

*Kono taipu no rajio wa ano mise de shika utte imasen*

Radios of this type are sold nowhere but at that store.

4. After dictionary form of verb

ここで待つしかありません。

*Koko de matsu shika arimasen*

There is nothing to do but wait here

sô desu そうです (1)

PREDICATIVE PHRASE MEANING: (I) hear (that), it is said (that)

It is used with reported speech or hearsay

1. After dictionary form of verb/adjective

明日は晴れるそうです。

*Asu wa hareru sô desu.*

I hear it will be sunny tomorrow.

このビルが日本でいちばん高いそうです。

*Kono biru ga nihon de ichiban takai sô desu*

It is said that this building is the tallest in Japan

2. After *nai*-form of verb

田中さんは今日は来ないそうです。

*Tanaka san wa kyō wa konai sō desu.*

I hear Mr. Tanaka won't come today.

3. After *ta* form of verb/adjective

彼女は泣いていたそうです。

*Kanojo wa naite ita sō desu.*

I hear she was crying

それはうまく行かなかったそうです

*Sore wa umaku ikanakatta sō desu*

They say it didn't go well.

- 4 After (adjectival) noun + *da/datta*

彼女は先週熱だったそうです

*Kanojo wa senshu netsu datta sō desu.*

I hear she had a fever last week.

▶ See also *rashii*

## **sō desu** そうです (2)

PREDICATE PHRASE MEANING look(s), seem(s)

The supposition expressed is based on the speaker's observation

1. After conjunctive form of verb

雨が降りそうですね。

*Ame ga furisō desu ne.*

It looks like rain, doesn't it?

私は試験にパスしそうもありません。

*Watashi wa shiken ni pasu shiso mo arimasen*

It doesn't look like I'll pass the exam.

## 2. After stem of adjective

あの人はとても優しくそうです。

*Ano hito wa totemo yasashiso desu*

That person looks very gentle

彼はあなたに会えてとてもうれしそうでした。

*Kare wa anata ni aete totemo ureshisō deshita.*

He looked very glad to see you.

## 3. After adjectival noun

退屈そうでしたね。

*Taikutsu sō deshita ne.*

You looked bored.

このケースは丈夫そうではありません。

*Kono kesu wa jobu sō dewa arimasen*

This case doesn't look durable

## 4. After yosa- or nasa-

(the irregular stems of *yoi* and *nai* respectively)

車の調子はよさそうです。

*Kuruma no choshi wa yosasō desu*

The condition of the car seems good.

彼女は元気がなさそうです。

*Kanojo wa genki ga nasasō desu*

She seems to be lacking in spirit. (She does not seem well.)

この料理はあまりおいしくなさそうです。

*Kono ryori wa amari oishiku nasaso desu.*

This dish doesn't look very good

## 5. In answer to a question

(used as affirmative answer to a question ending in *desu ka*)

「これはあなたのかばんですか。」「はい、そうです。」

“*Kore wa anata no kaban desu ka.*” “*Hai, sō desu.*”

174 • GRAMMATICAL FUNCTION WORDS

“Is this your bag?” “Yes, it is.”

▶ See also *mutai*, *rashu*, *so desu* (1), *yo desu*

**so ni natta** そうになった

PREDICATIVE PHRASE MEANING almost (did), nearly (did)

It may be replaced by the dictionary form of a verb, followed by *tokoro datta*.

1 After conjunctive form of verb

ねいようして飛行機に遅れそうになりました。

*Nebo shite hikoki ni okuresō ni narimashita.*

I overslept and nearly missed the airplane

電車を間違えそうになった。

*Densha o machigaesō ni natta*

I almost took a wrong train

▶ See also *tokoro*

**sore** それ

DEMONSTRATIVE NOUN MEANING that, those, it

It refers to an object or objects near the hearer and not far from the speaker, or something just mentioned and thus already known to both the speaker and the hearer. The polite form, *sochira*, means “that person” or “that direction.” It becomes *sono* before a noun it modifies and it becomes *soko* when expressing “that place” or “there.” *Sono* may also express the English definite article “the.”

1. Followed by particle

「それは何ですか。」「携帯用テレビです。」  
*"Sore wa nan desu ka" "Keitaiyō terebi desu"*

"What's that?" "It's a portable television."

それを貸して下さい。

*Sore o kashite kudasai*

Please lend it to me.

それでいいです。

*Sore de ii desu.*

That will do.

そこへ電車で行けますか。

*Soko e densha de ikemasu ka.*

Can I get there by train?

そこで何をしていたんですか。

*Soko de nani o shite ita n desu ka*

What were you doing there?

すぐそちらに行きます。

*Sugu sochira ni ikimasu*

I'll be there soon.

2. Followed by noun it modifies

そのかばんはだれのですか。

*Sono kaban wa dare no desu ka*

Whose is that bag?

その時ちょうどテレビを見ていました。

*Sono toki chodo terebi o mite imashita.*

Just at that time I was watching television.

3. Followed by *da/desu*

「捜しているのはこれですね。」「それです。」

*"Sagashite iru no wa kore desu ne." "Sore desu."*

**sorezore** それぞれ

ADVERB MEANING: each, respectively, one's own

## 1. After subject

私たちはそれぞれ好きなようにします。

*Watashi tachi wa sorezore suki-na yo ni shimasu.*

Each of us will do as each of us likes

田中先生と山田先生はそれぞれ数学と歴史を教えています。

*Tanaka sensei to yamada sensei wa sorezore sugaku to rekishi o oshiete imasu.*

Mr. Tanaka and Mr. Yamada teach math and history respectively.

## 2. After indirect object

先生は生徒にそれぞれ問題を1問ずつ与えた。

*Sensei wa seito ni sorezore mondai o ichi mon zutsu ataeta.*

The teacher gave each of the students one question.

3. Followed by *no*

(to modify a noun)

彼らはそれぞれの仕事を一生懸命している

*Karera wa sorezore no shigoto o issshokenmei shite iru.*

They work hard at their respective jobs.

**soshite** そして

CONJUNCTION MEANING: and, and then, and after that

1. After *te*-form of verb

これから本屋に行って、そしてデパートに行きます。



*Kore kara hon'ya ni itte, soshite depato ni ikimasu*

I will go to the bookstore, and then I will go to the department store

2 At the beginning of sentence

これからがんばって勉強します。そして大学に入ろうと  
思います。

*Kore kara ganbatte benkyo shimasu. Soshite daigaku ni hatrô to omoimasu.*

I will study hard from now on And I think I'll try to get into a university.

→ See also *sorekara*

**sô iu** そういふ

PHRASE MEANING: that kind of, that type of, such (a)

It may be replaced by *sonna*

1 Followed by noun it modifies

そういう本は私には合いません。

*Sô iu hon wa watashi ni wa mutte imasen*

That type of book is not suited to me

2 Used in idiomatic expression

そういうわけで予約をキャンセルしました。

*Sô iu wake de yoyaku o kanseru shimashita*

Such being the case, I canceled the reservation

そういう風に言われても困ります

*Sô iu fû ni iwaretemo komarimasu.*

I am at a loss if you speak like that

**sugiru** すぎる

VERB MEANING. too much, too many, too. . . , excessively

## 1. After conjunctive form of verb

(may be substituted with *sugi* [conjunctive form of *sugiru*] plus *desu*)

夕べは飲み過ぎました。

*Yube wa nomisugimashita.*

I drank too much last night

たくさんりんごを買いすぎました。

*Takusan ringo o kaisugimashita.*

I bought too many apples.

あなたは働きすぎです。

*Anata wa hatarakisugi desu.*

You are working too hard.

## 2. After the stem of adjective

この服は私には大きすぎます

*Kono fuku wa watashi ni wa ôkisugimasu.*

These clothes are too big for me

あの車は高すぎて買えません。

*Ano kuruma wa takasugite kaemasen.*

That car is so expensive that I can't buy it.

## 3. After adjectival noun

あなたは消極的すぎます。

*Anata wa shōkyoku teki sugimasu.*

You are too passive.

その手続きは複雑すぎて1人ではできません。

*Sono tetsuzuki wa fukuzatsu sugite hitori dewa dekimasen*

The procedure is too complicated to do alone

**sukoshi** 少し

ADVERB MEANING: a few, some, a little, a bit, a moment, (not) at all

1. In affirmative sentence

私は本を少し買いました。

*Watashi wa hon o sukoshi kaumashita.*

I bought a few books.

少し日本語が話せますね。

*Sukoshi nihongo ga hanasemasu ne.*

You can speak a little Japanese, can't you?

少しここで待って下さい。

*Sukoshi koko de matte kudasai*

Wait here a moment, please

2 Followed by *mo* in negative sentence

そんなことはすこしも気にしません

*Sonna koto wa sukoshi mo ki ni shimasen*

I don't care a bit about that.

▶ See also *amari*, *matte*, *takusan*, *totemo*, *yoku*, *zenzen*, *zuibun*

**suru** する

IRREGULAR VERB MEANING: do, play, work as . . . , perform (an action), cost, wear (an accessory), have (a meal, feeling), make (a sound), make (something into something else), treat (in some manner), decide on (something), possess (a figure/smell/etc )

1. After object + *o*

あなたはふだんどこで買物をしますか。

*Anata wa fudan doko de kaimono o shimasu ka.*

Where do you usually do your shopping?

thing else or some other state)

彼は彼女を幸せにするでしょう。

*Kare wa kanojo o shiawase ni suru deshō.*

He will make her happy.

あなたのお父さんはあなたを医者にするつもりですか

*Anata no otosan wa anata o isha ni suru tsumori desu ka*

Does your father intend to make you a doctor?

私は彼女からもらったプレゼントを大切にしています。

*Watashi wa kanojo kara moratta purezento o taisetsu ni shite imasu.*

I treasure the present I received from her

- 4 After object + *o* + *ku*-form of adjective

もっとスープを甘くした方がいいです

*Motto sūpu o amaku shita ho ga ii desu*

It's better to make the soup sweeter

- 5 After object + *ni* + *ku*-form of adjective

彼女に優しくしてあげなさい。

*Kanojo ni yasashiku shite agenasai*

Please treat her kindly.

6. After noun + *ni*

あの白い車にします。

*Ano shiroi kuruma ni shimasu.*

I'll take that white car.

7. After dictionary or *nai*-form of verb + *koto ni*

(*koto ni* adds the meaning "decide" or "pretend" [to do])

転職することになりました。

*Tenshoku suru koto ni shimashita.*

I decided to change my occupation

8. After *ta*-form of verb + *koto ni*

その事は聞かなかったことにします。

*Sono koto wa kikanakatta koto ni shimasu*

I'll pretend that I didn't hear that

9 After noun expressing action/state

(nouns mainly of Chinese origin and foreign loanwords can be made into verbs by adding *suru*)

町を案内します。

*Machi o annai shimasu.*

I'll show you around the town

(*itasu* can replace *suru* when the speaker wants to be humbler)

*Machi o annai itashimasu.*

ここに名前と住所を記入して下さい。

*Koko ni namae to jusho o kinyū shite kudasai.*

Please fill in your name and address here.

階段から転げて膝をけがしました。

*Kaidan kara korogete hiza o kega shimashita.*

I fell down the stairs and hurt my knee

今晚電話して下さい。

*Konban denwa shite kudasai.*

Please call me this evening.

やっとエンジンがスタートしましたが、またストップしました。

*Yatto enjin ga sutato shimashita ga, mata sutoppu shimashita.*

At last the engine started, but it stopped again.

(using *dekiru* instead of *suru* expresses potential)

車を運転できますか。

*Kuruma o unten dekimasu ka*

Can you drive a car?

10. After noun expressing price

この時計は1万円しました。

The *ta*-form is made by adding *ta* to the stem of the *te*-form of a verb. *Ta* euphonicly changes to *da* after a verb whose dictionary form ends with *-bu*, *-gu*, *-mu*, or *-nu*.

# 1. Used in verb

きのう私は新幹線で京都に行って来た。

*Kino watashi wa shinkansen de kyoto ni itte kita*

I went to Kyoto by shinkansen yesterday.

最近私はタバコをやめた。

*Saikin watashi wa tabako o yameta*

I stopped smoking recently.

ドアの鍵がこわれた。

*Doa no kagi ga kowareta.*

The lock on the door is broken.

仕事はもう終わった。

*Shigoto wa mō owatta.*

The work is finished.

この本は3回読んだ。

*Kono hon wa san kai yonda.*

I've read this book three times.

きのう見た映画はとても怖かった。

*Kino mita eiga wa totemo kowakatta*

The movie that I saw yesterday was very scary

(used as an adjectival, the *ta*-form of the verb directly precedes the noun it modifies)

# 2. Used in adjective

(*desu* after the *ta*-form makes it more polite)

きのう買ったカメラはとても安かったです。

*Kino katta kamera wa totemo yasukatta desu.*

The camera I bought yesterday was very cheap

「テストはむずかしかったですか。」「あまりむずかしくな  
 かったです。」

“*Tesuto wa muzukashikatta desu ka*” “*Amari muzukashiku  
 nakatta desu.*”

“Was the test difficult?” “It was not very difficult.”

→ See also Verb Forms (II)

## tabi ni 度に

CONJUNCTION MEANING: every time, each time, whenever

### 1. After dictionary form of verb

彼は会う度に仕事の不満を言う

*Kare wa au tabi ni shigoto no fuman o iu*

Every time he meets me, he complains about his job.

あの店に入る度に新しいソフトを買ってしまいます。

*Ano mise ni hairu tabi ni atarashii sofuto katte shimaimasu.*

Each time I go into that store I buy new software (in spite of myself).

## tai たい

AUXILIARY VERB MEANING: want to, would like to, feel like (doing),  
 wish to, hope to

The subject of verb + *tai* must be the 1st person in declarative simple sentences, and the 2nd person in simple questions or conditional clauses. The 3rd person subject is used with verb + *tai*

*Yoko wa suki ni ikitaku nakatta rashii*

It seems that Yoko didn't want to go skiing.

→ See also *hoshii, garu*

# **tame ni** ために

PHRASE MEANING for, for . 's sake, because of, on account of, owing to, as a result of, in order to, so as to, for the purpose of

## 1. After noun + *no*

それはあなたのためになるでしょう

*Sore wa anata no tame ni naru desho*

It will be good for you.

何のためにそれをするんですか

*Nan no tame ni sore o suru n desu ka*

For what purpose do you do that? (Why do you do that?)

飛行機は台風のために欠航しています。

*Hikoki wa taifu no tame ni kekko shite imasu*

The air service is being canceled because of a typhoon.

戦争のためにたくさんの難民が出た。

*Sensô no tame ni takusan nannin ga deta*

There were many refugees as a result of the war

父はガンのために死にました。

*Chichi wa gan no tame ni shinimashita*

My father died of cancer.

(*de* may replace *tame ni* when expressing cause)

外国旅行のために貯金をしなければなりません

*Gaikoku ryoko no tame ni chokin o shinakereba narimasen.*

I have to save money for travel abroad

将来のためにもっと勉強したいと思います



*Shōrai no tame ni motto benkyō shutai to omoimasu.*

For the sake of my future I think I'll study harder.

2. Between noun + *no* and the noun it modifies  
(changes to *tame no*)

これは初心者のための授業です。

*Kore wa shoshinsha no tame no jugyo desu.*

This is a class for beginners.

3. After adjectival noun + *na*  
(to express reason/cause)

彼は不まじめなために嫌われている

*Kare wa fumajime-na tame ni kirawarete iru.*

He is disliked because he is insincere

4. After dictionary form of verb  
(to express purpose)

私はお金を貯めるために一生懸命働いています

*Watashi wa o-kane o tameru tame ni issshokenmei hataratte imasu.*

I am working hard in order to save money.

5. After *nai*-form of verb  
(to express purpose)

電車で遅れないために早く用意しなさい

*Densha ni okurenai tame ni hayaku yoi shinasai*

Get ready quickly so as not to miss the train.

6. After *ta*-form of verb/adjective  
(to express reason/cause)

彼が休んだために何もできません。

*Kare ga yasunda tame ni nani mo dekimasen*

We can't do anything because he is absent.

彼は忙しかったために来られませんでした。

*Kare wa isogashikatta tame ni koraremasen deshita*

He wasn't able to come because he was busy

7 After (adjectival) noun + *datta*

(to express reason/cause)

彼女は不注意だったために事故を起こしたんです。

*Kanojo wa fuchui datta tame ni jiko o okoshita n desu*

She caused the accident because she was careless

8 After the demonstrative adjectives *kono*, *sono*, *ano*

私たちはそのために協力しているんです

*Watashi tachi wa sono tame ni kyoryoku shite iru n desu*

That is why we are cooperating.

• See also *de*, *kara*, *ni*, *node*, *no ni*, *yo ni*

## **tara** たら

**PARTICLE MEANING** if, when, after (doing), if only, if you're talking about/looking for. , why don't you (do)

The stem of the *te*-form of a verb plus *tara* makes the *tara*-form. *Tara* is euphonically changed into *dara* after a verb whose dictionary form ends with *-ba*, *-gu*, *-mu*, or *-nu*. *Moshi* is often put at the beginning of the sentence to stress the conditional meaning.

1. After the stem of *te*-form of verb

大雨が降ったらドライブに行くのはやめます。

*Ōame ga futtara doraibu ni iku no wa yamemasu*

If it rains heavily I'll give up going for a drive.

駅に着いたら電話して下さい。

*Eki ni tsuitara denwa shite kudasai*

When you arrive at the station, please call me

その本を読んだら私に貸して下さい。

*Sono hon o yondara watashi ni kashite kudasai*

After you read that book, please lend it to me

買物をしたら帰ります。

*Kaimono o shitara kaerimasu*

After shopping I'll go home.

(past actions expressed after *tara* must be done by someone else)

駅に着いたら彼女は待っていました

*Eki ni tsuitara kanojo wa matte imashita*

When I arrived at the station, she was waiting

2. At the end of sentence (with rising intonation)

ちゃんと調べてもらったら。

*Chanto shirabete morattara.*

What about having it properly checked out?

3. After (adjectival) noun + *dat(tara)*

(*da + tara* becomes *dattara*)

もし私があなただったらそんなことはしません。

*Moshi watashi ga anata dattara sonna koto wa shimasen*

If I were you, I wouldn't do such a thing.

明日いい天気だったらテニスをしませんか

*Ashita ii tenki dattara tennis o shimayen ka*

If the weather is good tomorrow, would you like to play tennis?

山田さんだったら今入院しています

*Yamada-san dattara ima nyuin shite imasu.*

If you're looking for Mr. Yamada, he is in the hospital now

日本語がもっと簡単だったらなあ。

*Nihongo ga motto kantan dattara na.*

If only Japanese were much simpler

4. After the stem of *ta*-form of adjective

よろしかったらうちに遊びに来て下さい。

*Yoroshikattara uchi ni asobi ni kite kudasai*

If it is all right, please come to my house to see me

▶ See also *ba*, *nara*, *to*, *to sureba*, Euphonic Changes (11)

## tari たり

PARTICLE EXPRESSING (some kind of) action/state like , actions performed in turn, sometimes and

The actions or states expressed are often in contrast to each other. *Tari* is euphonicallly changed into *dari* after a verb whose dictionary form ends with *-bu*, *-gu*, *-mu*, or *-nu*. *Suru* usually follows the last *tari*.

### 1 After the stem of *te*-form of verb

私は趣味で絵を書いたり俳句を作ったりします

*Watashi wa shumi de e o **kaitari** haiku o **tsukuttari** shimasu.*

I do things like painting and composing haiku as my hobbies

彼女はよく泣いたり笑ったりします

*Kanojo wa yoku **naitari** **warattari** shimasu*

She often cries and laughs in turn

今日は雨が降ったりやんだりします。

*Kyo wa ame ga **futtari** **yandari** shimasu*

It will rain on and off today.

彼は手伝ってくれたりくれなかつたりする

*Kare wa tetsudatte **kuretar** **kurenakattari** suru*

He sometimes helps me and sometimes not.

映画を見たり買物をしたりで楽しかった。

*Eiga o **mitari** **kaib mono** o **shitari** de tanoshikatta.*

The examination is over and I am relieved.

私は毎日自転車に乗って駅まで行きます

*Watashi wa mainichi jitensha ni notte eki made ikimasu.*

I ride a bicycle to go to the station every day

外国と比べて日本は物価が高い

*Gaikoku to kurabete nihon wa bukka ga takai*

Compared with foreign countries, the cost of living in Japan is high.

彼は助けてもらってお礼も言わなかった

*Kare wa tasukete moratte o-rei mo iwanakatta*

He was helped, but didn't express his thanks

2. After *ku*-form of adjective

寒くてたまりません。

*Samukute tamarimasen.*

It is so cold that I can't stand it.

この電車は速くてあの電車は遅いです。

*Kono densha wa hayakute ano densha wa osoi desu*

This train is fast and that one is slow

彼女はとても優しくてきれいです

*Kanojo wa totemo yasashikute kirei desu*

She is very kind and pretty.

- See also *da, de*, Euphonic Changes (II)

**te ageru** てあげる

→ See *ageru*

**te aru** である

→ See *aru*

**teki** 的

SUFFIX making specific nouns into adjectives or adverbs

- 1 After noun, followed by *da/desu*  
(becomes the predicate)

会の雰囲気は家庭的です。

*Kai no fun'iki wa katei teki desu.*

The atmosphere of the meeting is homey

2. After noun, followed by *na*  
(modifies noun)

それはとても現実的な計画です。

*Sore wa totemo genjitsu teki-na keikaku desu.*

That is a very realistic plan

3. After noun, followed by *ni*  
(modifies verb or adjective)

経済的に国が豊かでも 人 人は苦しい

*Keizai teki ni kuni ga yutaka demo hitori hitori wa kurushii*

Even though the country is economically rich, each individual is badly off.

**te kuru** て来る

PREDICATIVE PHRASE MEANING come to (do), begin to (do), have done (to some extent), have been (doing), get/become (some state describing the subject), (do something and then) come back

It becomes *de kuru* after a verb whose dictionary form ends with *-bu*, *-gu*, *-mu*, or *-nu*.

- 1 After the stem of *te*-form of verb

日本語の話し方が分って来ました。

*Nihongo no hanashikata ga wakatte kimashita*

I have come to understand how to speak Japanese

雨が降って来ました。

*Ame ga futte kimashita.*

It began to rain (and will continue to rain)

これまでにたくさん漢字を覚えて来ました。

*Kore made takusan kanji o oboete kimashita.*

I have learned a lot of kanji so far.

今の仕事に慣れて来ましたか

*Ima no shigoto ni narete kimashita ka*

Have you become accustomed to your present job?

デパートに買物に行つて来ます。

*Depato ni kaumono ni itte kimasu.*

I'll go shopping at a department store (and then come back).

## 2. After *ku*-form of adjective

(the *te*-form of *naru* [*natte*] is always used between the *ku*-form of adjective and *kuru*)

このごろだいぶ暖かくなって来ましたね

*Kono goro daibu atatakaku natte kimashita ne*

It is getting much warmer recently, isn't it?

→ See also *te iku*

## temasu てます

ABBREVIATED INFORMAL FORM of the progressive form *te imasu*

It is used only in informal speech. After a verb whose dictionary form ends with *-bu*, *gu*, *mu*, or *nu* it euphonically changes to *demasu*.

200 • GRAMMATICAL FUNCTION WORDS

1 After the stem of *te* form of verb

彼女は今図書館で本を読んでいます

*Kanojo wa ima toshokan de hon o yondemasu*

She is reading a book in the library now

彼がどこで仕事をしてるのか知っていますか。

*Kare ga doko de shigoto o shiteru no ka shittemasu ka.*

Do you know where he is doing his work?

「何をしてたんですか。」「電話をしてました。」

*"Nani o shiteta n desu ka" "Denwa o shitemashita"*

"What were you doing?" "I was talking on the phone"

→ See *iru, masu*

**temo** ても

PARTICLE MEANING even if, though, whether . . . or . . . , no matter

It euphontically changes to *demo* after a verb whose dictionary form ends with *-bu*, *-gu*, *-mu*, or *-nu*, and after adjectival nouns.

1 After the stem of *te*-form of verb

うまく行っても中断しないようにして下さい

*Umaku ittemo yudan shinai yo ni shite kudasai*

Even if it goes well, please try not to be inattentive

そのことについて聞いても彼女は答えませんでした。

*Sono koto ni tsuite kiitemo kanojo wa kotaemasen deshita.*

Though I asked her about that matter, she didn't answer.

雨が降っても遊びに行きます。

*Ame ga futtemo asobi ni ikimasu*



Even if it rains, I'm going out to have fun.

2. After interrogative word

何をしてもおもしろくありません。

*Nani o shitemo omoshiroku arimasen*

No matter what I do, it's not interesting.

いつ行っても彼は留守です。

*Itsu ittemo kare wa rusu desu.*

No matter when I go, he isn't home.

どんなに速く走ってもバスに間にあいません。

*Donna ni hayaku hashitemo basu ni ma ni aimasen.*

No matter how fast we may run, we won't be able to catch the bus.

いくら、っても子供は、うことを聞きません

*Ikura ittemo kodomo wa iu koto o kikimasen.*

No matter how often I say it, the children don't listen (to what I say).

3. After *ku*-form of adjective

たとえ行きたくなくても行かなければなりません。

*Tatoe ikitaku nakutemo ikanakereba narimasen*

Even if you don't want to go, you have to

どんなに高くてもあれが欲しい

*Donna ni takakutemo are ga hoshii*

No matter how expensive that is, I want it.

4. After adjectival noun

いくらいやでもそれを実行しなければならない。

*Ikura iya demo sore o jikkō shinakereba naranai.*

No matter how much you dislike it, you have to carry it out.

→ See also *dema*, *keredo(mo)*, *mo*

**temo ii** てもいい

PREDICATIVE PHRASE MEANING: may, can, it is all right (even) if . . . ,  
(not) have to (do), do without . . . , (not) feel like (doing)

It euphonically changes to *demo* after a verb whose dictionary form ends with *-bu*, *-gu*, *-mu*, or *-nu*, and after adjectival nouns.

The *mo* is sometimes dropped, and *ii* may be replaced by its synonym *you/yoroshii*. However, *yoroshii* is usually used in affirmative sentences when speaking to a younger person, and is followed by *desu ka* in questions when speaking to a person who is older or of higher status. It may also be replaced by *kamawanai/kamaimasen*.

1 After the stem of *te*-form of verb

このコピー機は自由に使ってもいいです

*Kono kopii ki wa jiyu ni tsukatteremo ii desu.*

You can use this copy machine freely

(*kekko desu* should replace *ii desu* when giving permission to a superior)

「入っていいですか。」「ええ、もちろん」

“*Huite ii desu ka.*” “*Ee, mochiron*”

“May I come in?” “Yes, of course”

(note that *mo* has been dropped)

「もう帰ってもよろしいですか。」「いえ、いけません。」

“*Mô kaetteremo yoroshii desu ka*” “*Ie, ikemasen*”

“May I leave now?” “No, you may not”

(speaking to a superior)

2. After *ku*-form of adjective

(*kekko* can replace *ii*)

動けば古くてもいいです。

*Ugokeba furukutemo ii desu*

If it works, it is all right even if it is old.

マニュアルはなくてもいいです。

*Manyuaru wa nakutemo ii desu*

It's all right even if there isn't a manual. (I can do without a manual.)

天気は良くなくてもいいです。

*Tenki wa yokunakutemo ii desu*

It's all right even if the weather is not good.

そんなに急がなくてもいいですよ

*Sonna ni isoganakutemo ii desu yo.*

You don't have to hurry so much

私は泳がなくてもいいです、見えます。

*Watashi wa oyoganakutemo ii desu Mitemasu.*

I don't feel like swimming. I'll just watch

3 After (adjectival) noun or interrogative word

不便でもいいです。

*Fuben demo ii desu.*

It's alright even if it's inconvenient

簡単でもいいですから書いてください。

*Kantan demo ii desu kara, kaite kudasai.*

Even something simple will be fine, so please write (something).

何でもいいです。

*Nan demo ii desu.*

Anything is fine.

何時でもいいですか。

*Itsu demo ii desu ka*

Will anytime be alright?

→ See also *ikenai, temo, yoroshii*

I absent-mindedly left my umbrella in a restroom.

あの人が好きになってしまいそうです

*Ano hito ga suki ni natte shimaisō desu*

I feel I will really grow to like that person. (I have a feeling I'm going to fall for that person.)

## to と

PARTICLE MEANING and, or, with (accompanied by), when(ever), once . . . , if, no matter

It also indicates a quotation, a statement in indirect speech, the object of a specific verb, a word that describes the object of a sentence, a criterion for comparison, or how an action is performed

### 1. Between nouns

フィルムと乾電池を下さい。

*Furumu to kandenchi o kudasai*

I'll take film and dry batteries

水曜日から日曜日が私の休みです

*Suiyobi to nichiyobi ga watashi no yasumi desu*

Wednesday and Sunday are my holidays

ジュースとアイスクリームのどちらにしますか。

*Jūsu to aisu kurumu no dochira ni shimasu ka.*

Which would you like, juice or ice cream?

### 2. After noun expressing person

私は前の日曜日に妻と映画を見てきました。

*Watashi wa mae no nichiyobi ni tsuma to eiga o mite kimashita.*

I went and saw a movie with my wife last Sunday

[今だれと話していたんですか。]「友人のマイクとです。」

*"Ima dare to hanashite ita n desu ka"* *"Yujin no maiku to desu."*

"Who were you talking with just now?" "With my friend Mike."

彼女はだれと結婚するんですか、

*Kanojo wa dare to kekkon suru n desu ka*

Who is she going to marry?

3. After dictionary form of verb/adjective

今朝起きると頭痛がしました。

*Kesa okuru to zutsu ga shimashita*

When I got up this morning, I had a headache

彼はカラオケを歌い出すとなかなかやめない

*Kare wa karaoke o utaidasu to nakanaka yamenai.*

Once he starts singing to karaoke he doesn't readily stop.

出かけるとすぐに雨が降り出した。

*Dekakeru to sugu ni ame ga furidashita.*

As soon as I left home, it began to rain

あの角を右に曲がるとバス停があります

*Ano kado o migi ni magaru to basu tei ga arimasu*

If you turn to the right at that corner there's a bus stop.

私は本屋に行くとよく立ち読みをしていた。

*Watashi wa hon'ya ni iku to yoku tachiyomi o shite ita*

I would often browse through books when I went to book stores

(unlike *tara*, the action expressed after *to* may be of the subject's own volition)

4. After interrogative word + volitional form of verb

彼が何をしようと私には関係ありません

*Kare ga nani o shiyô to watashi ni wa kankai arimasen*

No matter what he may do, I have nothing to do with it.

5 After statement in reported speech or quotation

(the statement must end with dictionary, *nai*-, or *ta*-form of verb/adjective, *da*, a particle, or command form of verb)

彼女はもうすぐ来ると思います

*Kanojo wa mô sugu kuru to omoimasu*

I think (that) she will come soon.

彼は行きたくないと言っていました

*Kare wa ikitaku nai to itte imashita*

He said that he didn't want to go.

彼は来月日本に行くと言っていました

*Kare wa raigetsu nihon ni iku to kaite kimashita.*

He wrote that he is coming to Japan next month

彼女はいつでも遊びに来て下さいと言っていましたよ。

*Kanojo wa itsu demo asobi ni kite kudasai to itte imashita yo.*

She said to please come and see her any time.

これは何だと思いますか。

*Kore wa nan da to omoimasu ka*

What do you think this is?

店は8時から17時までと書いてあります。

*Mise wa hachi ji kara jû shichu ji made to kaite arimasu.*

It is written that the shop is open from eight to seventeen (five) o'clock

6. After (adjectival) noun/adjective that describes the object

私は犬をケンと呼んでいます。

*Watashi wa inu o ken to yonde imasu*

I call my dog Ken.

みんなそれをいいと思っています。

*Minna sore o ii to omotte imasu.*

Everybody thinks that is good.

彼らは彼の行為を無罪と見なした

*Karera wa kare no kôit o muzai to minashita.*

They regarded his behavior as innocent

7. After word/clause that describes some other word

ファミコンと呼ばれるテレビゲームがはやっています

*Famikon to yobareru terebi game ga hayatte imasu*

A video game called Famicom is popular.

私はその町で最高だとされるホテルに泊った

*Watashi wa sono machi de saikô da to sareru hoteru ni tomatte.*

I stayed at a hotel reputed to be the best in town.

8. After noun/clause expressing criterion for comparison

あなたの時計は私が買ったのと同じです

*Anata no tokei wa watashi ga katta no to onaji desu.*

Your watch is the same as the one that I bought.

この本は私が注文したのとは違います。

*Kono hon wa watashi ga chûmon shita no to chigaimasu.*

This book is not the one I ordered.

9. After specific adverb/imitative word

(to may be dropped)

もっとゆっくり(と)話してくださいませんか

*Motto yukkuri (to) hanashite kuremasen ka.*

Will you speak more slowly?

酔っ払いがふらふら(と)歩いていますよ

*Yopparai ga furafura (to) aruite imasu yo.*

A drunk is staggering around.

- See also *ba*, *koto*, *tara*, *temo*, *to ka*

**to ka** とか

PARTICLE MEANING some kind of (things/persons/actions/states)  
like . . . , mainly . . . and . . .

## 1. Between nouns

私はロックとかジャズをよく聞きます

*Watashi wa rokku to ka jazu o yoku kikimasu*

I usually listen to (music like) rock and jazz.

私はトムとかマイクとよく親しい話をします

*Watashi wa tomu to ka maiku to yoku shitashu hanashi o shimasu.*

I usually have intimate talks mainly with people like Tom and Mike.

2. After dictionary form of each of two successive verbs, followed by *suru*

一人の時はテレビを見るとかレコードを聞くとかします。

*Hitori no toki wa terebi o miru to ka rekodo o kiku to ka shimasu.*

I watch television or listen to records when I'm alone.

## 3. After quoted statement

(indicates a quotation of uncertain content)

彼女は仕事をやめるとか言っていました。

*Kanojo wa shigoto o yameru to ka itte imashita*

She said something like she would quit her job.

4. Followed by *iū*

山本さんとかいう女の人から電話ですよ

*Yamamoto-san to ka iū onna no hito kara denwa desu yo.*

There's a telephone call for you from a woman named something like Ms. Yamamoto.

→ See also *ni, tari, to, to iu, ya*



**toki ni** 時に

CONJUNCTION MEANING. (at the time) when . . . , as . . . , while, whenever, in case of

*Toki* literally means "time" and *ni* "at." *Ni* is sometimes omitted, replaced by *wa*, or followed by *wa*.

## 1 After dictionary form of verb/adjective

外国に行く時にはトラバースチェックを持っています。  
*Gaikoku ni iku toki ni wa toraberazu chekku o motte imasu.*

When I go abroad, I take traveler's checks.

家を出る時に雪が降って来ました。

*Ie o deru toki ni yuki ga futte kimashita.*

It began to snow as I was leaving home

私は読書をする時は音楽を聞きます

*Watashi wa dokusho o suru toki wa ongaku o kikimasu.*

I listen to music while reading books

出かける時には鍵締まりをなささい

*Dekakeru toki ni wa tojimari o shinasai.*

When you go out, make sure to lock the doors.

今度そこへ行く時にはカメラを持って行きましょう。

*Kondo soko e iku toki ni wa kamera o motte ikimashō*

Let's take a camera with us the next time we go there

暑い時はビールがうまい。

*Atsui toki wa biiru ga umai.*

When it is hot, beer is tasty

彼は私が悲しい時にはいつも励ましてくれます。

*Kare wa watashi ga kanashii toki ni wa itsumo hagemashite kuremasu.*

He always cheers me up when I am sad

2. After *ta* form of verb/adjective

私が来た時には彼女はまだ来ていませんでした。

*Watashi ga kita toki ni wa kanojo wa mada kite imasen deshita*

When I came, she had not yet arrived

困った時はいつでもお手伝いします

*Komatta toki wa itsu demo o-tetsudai shimasu*

I'll help you whenever you're in a bind.

食事をした時には「ごちそうさま」と言います。

*Shokujō o shita toki ni wa "gochiso-sama" to imasu.*

After having a meal we say, "gochiso-sama"

3. After noun + *no*

私は大学生の時に哲学を専攻していました。

*Watashi wa daigakusei no toki ni tetsugaku o senko shite imashita.*

When I was a university student, I was specializing in philosophy.

火事の際は、この赤いボタンを押して下さい。

*Kaji no toki ni wa kono akai botan o oshite kudasai*

Push this red button in case of fire.

(*hai* may replace *toki* when expressing "in case of")

緊急時には電話を下さい。

*Kinkyū no toki ni wa denwa o kudasai*

Please call me up in case of emergency.

4. After adjectival noun + *na*

これは必要な時に自由に使ってください。

*Kore wa hitsuyō-na toki ni jiyū ni tsukatte kudasai*

Please use this freely whenever you need it.

5 After (adjectival) noun + *datta*

私が学生だった時には授業料は安かった。

*Watashi ga gakusei datta toki ni wa jugyōryō wa yasukatta.*

When I was a student, the tuition was cheap.

➤ See also *ato de*, *mae ni*, *tara*, *to*, *tsuide ni*, *uchi ni*

**tokoro** ところ

NOUN MEANING a place, a point in time

Followed by a particle or *da/desu/datta/deshita* it expresses, where somebody is, a place which is . . ., be about to (do), be going to (do), on the verge of, in the middle of (some action or state), have just (done), have been (doing), just as, or nearly (did something).

1. After noun expressing person + *no*

私のところに来て下さい。

*Watashi no tokoro ni kite kudasai.*

Please come to the place where I am. (Please come to me.)

東京に行った時は兄のところに泊ります

*Tokyo ni itta toki wa ani no tokoro ni tomarimasu*

When I visit Tokyo, I'll stay at my older brother's.

2. After word expressing length of time/distance + *no*

大学は駅から歩いて15分のところにあります。

*Daigaku wa eki kara aruite jū go fun no tokoro ni arimasu*

The university is at a place which is fifteen minutes from the station on foot. (The university is a fifteen-minute walk from the station.)

214 • GRAMMATICAL FUNCTION WORDS

郵便局はここから約五百メートルのところです。

*Yubinkyoku wa koko kara yaku go hyaku metoru no tokoro desu*

The post office is about five hundred meters from here.

3. After dictionary form of verb

ちょうど仕事を終わるところです

*Chodo shigoto o owaru tokoro desu.*

I am just about to finish work

「どこへ行くんですか。」「温泉に泊りに行くところです。」

*"Doko e iku n desu ka." "Onsen ni tomaru ni iku tokoro desu."*

"Where are you going?" "I'm about to go stay at a hot spring."

電話した時彼女は家を出るところでした

*Denwa shita toki kanojo wa ie o deru tokoro deshita*

She was about to leave home when I called her.

新幹線に乗り遅れるところでした

*Shinkansen ni noriokureru tokoro deshita*

We were on the verge of missing the shinkansen

今そのことについて彼女と話しているところです

*Ima sono koto ni tsuite kanojo to hanashite iru tokoro desu*

I am in the middle of talking to her about that now

4. After *ta*-form of verb

ちょうど食事の準備ができたところです

*Chodo shokuryu no junbi ga dekita tokoro desu.*

Dinner preparations have just been completed

さきほど着いたところです。

*Saki hodo tsuita tokoro desu.*

I arrived just now

銀行を出たところで彼女に会いました。

*Ginko o deta tokoro de kanojo ni aimashita*

I met her just as I went out of the bank

寝ようとしていたところへ電話がかかってきました。

*Neyō to shite ita tokoro e denwa ga kakatte kimashita*

The telephone rang just as I was going to bed.

5. After dictionary form of adjective

お忙しいところ、どうもすいません。

*O-isogashii tokoro, domo suimasen*

I'm sorry to trouble you when you are busy

**tokoro ga**    ところが

CONJUNCTION MEANING: but, however, and

1. After *ta*-form of verb

買物をしに来たところが店が閉まっていた。

*Kaimono o shi ni kita tokoro ga mise ga shimatte imashita.*

I came to do my shopping, but the store was closed.

やってみたところがうまく行きました

*Yatte mita tokoro ga umaku ikimashita*

I tried it, and it worked well

2. At the beginning of sentence

彼にお金を貸してあげた。ところがまた返してくれない。

*Kare ni o-kane o kashite ageta Tokoro ga mada kaeshite kurenai.*

I lent him some money. But he has not returned it to me yet

東京はいい町です。ところが暑すぎます。

*Tokyo wa ii machi desu. Tokoro ga atsusugimasu.*

Tokyo's a good town But it's too hot.

→ See also *daga*, *dakedo*, *ga* (2), *keredo*(*mo*)

**to shitemo** としても

CONJUNCTION MEANING even though/if, no matter

*Tatoe* may also be put at the beginning of the clause for emphasis. The *to* may be replaced by *ni*.

1 After dictionary form of verb/adjective

お金を持っているとしてもそんな高い物を買ってはいけ  
ない。

*O-kane o motte iru to shitemo sonna takai mono o kattewa  
ikenai.*

Even though you have the money, you should not buy such an  
expensive thing.

たとえ日本語がむずかしいとしてもあきらめずに勉強して  
下さい。

*Tatoe nihongo ga muzukashii to shitemo akiramezu ni benkyo  
shite kudasai.*

Even if Japanese is difficult, continue studying and don't give  
up.

2. After *nai*-form of verb

たとえ要らないとしても支払わなければなりません。

*Tatoe iranai to shitemo shiharawanakereba ikemasen.*

Even if you don't need it, you must pay for it.

3 After *ta*-form of verb/adjective

たとえ何が起こったとしてもあきらめません。

*Tatoe nani ga okotta to shitemo akiramemasen*

No matter what happens, I won't give up

彼がそれを知らなかったとしてもその過ちは許されない。

*Kare ga sore o shiranakatta to shitemo sono ayamachi wa  
yurusarenai.*

2. After *nai*-form of verb

彼ができないとすればだれにしてみもらおう

*Kare ga dekinai to sureba dare ni shite morao*

Assuming that he can't, who shall we have do it?

3. After *ta* form of verb/adjective

彼がうそをついたとすれば彼女にもたずねるべきだ

*Kare ga uso o tsuita to sureba kanojo ni mo tazuneru beki da*

Assuming that he told a lie, you should ask her about it, too.

4. After (adjectival) noun + *da*

彼が先生だとすれば何を教えているのだらう

*Kare ga sensei da to sureba nani o oshiete iru no daro*

Assuming that he is a teacher, I wonder what he is teaching

これがためだとすればどんなものか良いのだらう

*Kore ga dame da to sureba donna mono ga yoi no daro*

Assuming that this is no good, what kind of things will be good?

## 5. At the beginning of sentence

彼のかぜをひいたといっています とすれば、あなたに頼まなければなりません。

*Kare wa kaze o huta to itte imasu To sureba, anata ni tanomau kereba narimasen.*

He says that he has a cold. If that is the case, I have to ask a favor of you

→ See also *ba, nara, tara, to*

**totemo** とても

ADVERB MEANING very, terribly, (not) .at all, (not). . possibly

## 1. Before adjective/adjectival noun

今日はとても暑いですね。

*Kyō wa totemo atsui desu ne.*

Today is very hot, isn't it?

そこはとても危険なので入ってはいけません。

*Soko wa totemo kiken-na node haette wa ikemasen*

That place is very dangerous so you must not go in

2. Used with negative potential verb

この寒さにはとても我慢できません。

*Kono samusa ni wa totemo gaman dekimasen.*

I can't possibly put up with this cold.

3. Used in statement expressing improbability

(takes a negative verb)

とても間に合う見込みはありません

*Totemo mani au mikomu wa arimasen.*

There is no hope at all that we'll make it in time.

→ See also *amari, mattaku*

to iū という

PHRASE MEANING. of, called, saying that, the fact that

1. After noun in apposition to the following word

私は神戸という都市に住んでいます

*Watashi wa kōbe to iū toshi ni sunde imasu*

I live in a city called Kobe. (I live in the city of Kobe.)

佐藤という人が会いに来ています。

*Satō to iū hito ga ai ni kite imasu.*

A Mr. Sato is here to see you

2. After statement in apposition to the following word

彼女は彼が無事だという知らせを聞いて喜んだ。



*Kanojo wa kare ga buji da to iu shirase o kute yorokonda.*  
She was happy to hear the news that he was all right.

- 3 After statement, followed by *no/koto*  
(nominalizes the preceding statement)

彼が結婚したというのは本当です。

*Kare ga kekkon shita to iu no wa honto desu.*

It is true that he got married.

彼女が入院しているのを知っていますか。

*Kanojo ga nyuin shite iru to iu koto o shitte imasu ka*

Do you know that she is in the hospital?

→ See also *koto*, *no*, *to*

### **tsuide ni** ついでに

PHRASE MEANING on the way, while .. incidentally

This phrase implies that some opportunity is taken advantage of in order to do something else

1. After dictionary form of verb

銀行へ行くついでにこの手紙をポストに入れて下さい。

*Ginko e iku tsuide ni kono tegami o posuto ni irete kudasai*

Please mail this letter on your way to the bank.

コーヒーを飲むついでにケーキも食べましょう。

*Kōhī o nomu tsuide ni kēki mo tabemashō*

While we're drinking coffee, let's have some cake, too.

- 2 After *ta*-form of verb

彼に会ったついでにそれを頼みました。

*Kare ni atta tsuide ni sore o tanomimashita.*

I asked him to do it since I met him

映画を見に行っただいには買物をして来ました。

*Eiga o mi ni itta tsuide ni kaimono o shite kimashita.*

While I went (out) to see a movie I did my shopping.

3. After noun + *no*

旅行のついでに昔の友人に会って来ました。

*Ryoko no tsuide ni mukashi no yujin ni atte kimashita.*

I met my old friend while traveling.

4. At the beginning of sentence

ついでにひとつ大事なことを言っておきます

*Tsuide ni hitotsu daijī-na koto o itte okimasu*

While I am at it, let me tell you one important thing

▶ See also *toki ni*

**tsumori desu** つもりです

PHRASE MEANING: be going to, intend to, plan to, mean to, expect (somebody) to, think/fancy that

*Tsumori* is a noun expressing intention, expectation, or fancy. It can also be used with *de*.

1. After dictionary form of verb

日本ではどんな仕事を探すつもりですか。

*Nihon de wa donna shigoto o sagasu tsumori desu ka.*

What kind of job do you intend to look for in Japan?

一生懸命働いてお金をたくさん貯めるつもりです。

*Isshōkenmei hataraitte o-kane o takusan tameru tsumori desu.*

I plan to work hard and save a lot of money

この写真は彼女にあげるつもりでした

*Kono shashin wa kanojo ni ageru tsumori deshita*

I intended to give this photograph to her

傷つけるつもりはありませんでした。

*Kizutsukeru tsumori wa arimasen deshita.*

I didn't mean to hurt you.

少年は日本に住むつもりで日本語を勉強した。

*Shonen wa nihon ni sumu tsumori de nihongo o benkyo shita.*

The boy studied Japanese with the intention of living in Japan.

2. After *nai*-form of verb

私は今年の夏はどこにも行かないつもりです

*Watashi wa kotoshi no natsu wa doko ni mo ikanai tsumori desu.*

I have no intention of going anywhere this summer.

3. After dictionary form of adjective

彼女は自分ではかわいいつもりでいる

*Kanojo wa jibun de wa kawaii tsumori de iru.*

She fancies herself to be cute.

4. After *ta*-form of verb/adjective

ちゃんと書いたつもりですが。

*Chanto kaita tsumori desu ga*

I thought that I wrote it properly, but . . . (didn't I?)

それで十分良かったつもりですが

*Sore de jubun yokatta tsumori desu ga*

I thought it was good enough, but . . . (wasn't it?)

5. After noun + *no*

彼は芸術家のつもりでいます。

*Kare wa geijutsuka no tsumori de imasu*

He fancies himself an artist.

何のつもりでそんなことをしたのですか。

*Nan no tsumori de sonna koto o shita no desu ka*

With what intention did you do such a thing?

6. After adjectival noun + *na/datta*

彼らは勤勉なつもりでいる。

*Karera wa kinben-na tsumori de iru*

They fancy themselves diligent

彼はそうするのが賢明だったつもりでいます

*Kare wa so suru no ga kenmei datta tsumori de imasu.*

He thinks it was wise of him to do so

→ See also *toki ni*

**tte** って

INFORMAL PARTICLE (used mostly but not exclusively by women) that emotionally emphasizes the subject or object noun, a quoted statement, or a concessive clause

1. After subject/object

(used in place of *wa* to emphasize the subject/object)

マイクってとてもおもしろい人ですね、

*Maiku-tte totemo omoshiroi hito desu ne.*

Mike is a very interesting man, isn't he?

あの事故って彼が起こしたんですよ

*Ano jiko-tte kare ga okoshita n desu yo*

That accident—he caused it, you know.

2. After dictionary form of verb

(makes verb into noun equivalent)

漢字を覚えるってむずかしいですね

*Kanji o oboeru-tte muzukashii desu ne.*

Memorizing kanji is difficult, isn't it?

3. After *ta*-form of verb

(expresses concessive clauses)

今頃気付いたってもう遅いよ。

*Ima goro kizuita-tte mō osoi yo*

Noticing now is really too late

4. After quoted statement

(a verb after *-tte* is often omitted when it is obvious)

彼女は行かないって、いますよ。『行かないって?』

*"Kanojo wa ikanai-tte ittemasu yo" "Ikanai-tte"*

"She says she won't go" "She won't go" (Really?)"

絶対に良くなるって。

*Zettai ni yoku naru-tte.*

No doubt it will get better

→ See also *no, koto, to, wa*

**uchi de/kara** うちで／から

PHRASE MEANING among, between, of

*Uchi* can be replaced with *naka*

1. After noun + *no*

彼らのうちでだれか日本語を話せますか

*Karera no uchi de dare ga nihongo o hanasemasu ka.*

Which of them can speak Japanese?

3冊のうちから好きな本を1冊選んで下さい。

*San satsu no uchi kara suki-na hon o issatsu erunde kudasai*

Please choose your favorite book among the three

→ See also *aida ni*

**uchi ni** うちに

CONJUNCTION OR PHRASE MEANING within, during, in (some state),  
out of, while, before (with a negative)

When it follows a verb, the main clause will state something  
that should be done in a hurry.

1. After noun + *no*

数か月のうちに日本語が話せるようになるでしょう

*Sûkagetsu no uchi ni nihongo ga hanaseru yo ni naru desho.*

You'll be able to speak Japanese within a few months

朝のうちに出発の準備をしておきます

*Asa no uchi ni shuppatsu no junbi o shite okimasu.*

I'll finish my preparations for the departure during the morning

国会は混乱のうちに閉会した

*Kokkai wa konran no uchi ni heikai shita*

The National Diet closed in the midst of confusion.

彼は1年のうち3ヶ月は仕事で家にいません

*Kare wa ichi nen no uchi san kagetsu wa shigoto de ie ni imasen.*

He is away from home on business three months a year

(*ni* is dropped when a definite number is stated)

15人のうち10人が女性でした

*Ju go nin no uchi ju nin ga josei deshita.*

Ten out of fifteen persons were female

## 2 After dictionary form of verb/adjective

何でもできるうちにやっておくのが、いいと思います。

*Nan demo dekiru uchi ni yatte oku no ga ii to omoimasu*

sentence, something that is contrasted with some other thing, something that is singled out for special attention

*Wa* cannot be used in a relative clause, and is rarely used in other subordinate clauses (conditional/concessive clauses) when it has already been used to introduce a word as the topic of the whole sentence or the main clause

Interrogative words such as *nani* or *dare* may not be followed by *wa* because they cannot be a topic themselves. Note that the particle *wa* is expressed by は, not by わ.

# 1. After subject

(The predicate after *wa* only describes one attribute of the subject; therefore, the existence of the subject needs to be already known to the hearer. *Ga*, on the other hand, tells complete information about a subject at the time of speaking. The subject in a subordinate clause must be indicated by *ga*.)

彼女は大学生です 英語を勉強しています

***Kanojo wa daigakusei desu Eigo o benkyo shite imasu***

She is a college student. She is studying English.

あの人がポールです 彼はアメリカから来ました

***Ano hito ga poru desu. Kare wa amerika kara kimashita.***

That man is Paul. He came from America.

彼が買った車はドイツ製です。とてもいい車です。

***Kare ga katta kuruma wa doutsu-sei desu Totemo ii kuruma desu.***

The car that he bought is German made. It's a very nice one.

日本語をマスターするのはむずかしいです。でも楽しいです。

*Nihongo o masutā suru no wa muzukashii desu Demo tanoshii desu*

It is difficult to master Japanese But it's fun

## 2. After object

(When the object of a verb is indicated by *wa*, the subject of the verb must be indicated by *ga* and placed after the object + *wa*, except when it is expressed in contrast with another subject)

この本はマ리가きのう貸してくれたんですが、もう読みました。

*Kono hon wa mari ga kino kashite kureta n desu ga, mo yomimashita.*

Mari lent this book to me yesterday, and I've already read it

英, 4 は日本人が覚えるにはむずかしすぎるかもしれません。

*Eigo wa nihonjin ga oboeru ni wa muzukashisugiru kamo shiremasen.*

It may be too difficult for Japanese to learn English

## 3. After topic of sentence

スポーツは何が好きですか。

*Supotsu wa nani ga suki desu ka*

Talking about sports, what do you like? (What sports do you like?)

ミチコさんは髪がきれいですね。

*Michiko-san wa kami ga kirei desu ne*

As for Michiko, her hair is beautiful, isn't it? (Michiko has beautiful hair, doesn't she?)

## 4. After each of two contrasted words

今日は仕事を休みますが、明日は必ず働きます。

*Kyo wa shigoto o yasumimasu ga, asu wa kanarazu hatarakimasu*



Today I'll take off from my job, but tomorrow I'll be sure to work.

彼は行くそうですが、私はわかりません

*Kare wa iku so desu ga, watashi wa wakarimasen*

He says that he will go, but I don't know (whether I will go or not).

(the contrasted word is sometimes not stated)

彼はタバコは吸いません。

*Kare wa tabako wa suimasen*

He doesn't smoke (but he may drink)

私は毎日3時間は勉強します

*Watashi wa manichi san jikan wa benkyo shimasu*

I study at least three hours every day (and sometimes longer)

- 5 After noun + *de*, adjectival noun + *de/ni*, or *ku*-form of adjective

(a word to be contrastively negated is first introduced with *wa*)

これは私のかばんではありません

*Kore wa watashi no kaban de wa arimasen.*

This is not my bag

彼女は病気ではありません。

*Kanojo wa byoki de wa arimasen*

She is not sick.

それは簡単にはできません。

*Sore wa kantan ni wa dekimasen.*

You can't do it easily.

この時計は安くはありません。

*Kono tokei wa yasuku wa arimasen*

This watch is not cheap.

6. After particle

(the word preceding the particle is usually contrasted with

**230 • GRAMMATICAL FUNCTION WORDS**

some other word that is not stated)

ここでは静かにして下さい。

*Koko de wa shizuka ni shite kudasai*

Please keep quiet here (You can talk somewhere else.)

あの服よりはこのほうがいい。

*Ano fuku yori wa kono ho ga ii*

This dress is better than that one (But possibly there is a better one.)

10時まではテレビを見てもよろしい。

*Ju ji made wa terebi o mitemo yoroshii.*

You may watch television until ten o'clock (but no later).

これからがんばります。

*Kore kara wa ganbarimasu.*

From now on I'll do my best (since I've been lazy)

東京では物価が高すぎますね。

*Tokyo de wa bukka ga takasugimasu ne*

In Tokyo prices are too high, aren't they?

- See also *dewa* (1), *ga* (1)

**wake わけ**

NOUN MEANING the reason why/for

It can be replaced with its synonym *ryu*

1. After dictionary or *nai*- form of verb/adjective

日本語を学ぶわけは興味があるからです。

*Nihongo o manabu wake wa kyōmi ga aru kara desu.*

The reason why I learn Japanese is that I am interested in it

2. Used in idiomatic expression (may not be replaced by *ryu*)

(followed by *ni wa ikanai*, meaning "should not")

あなたがしないなら私もするわけには行きません

*Anata ga shinai nara watashi mo suru wake ni wa ikimasen*

If you don't do it, I shouldn't either.

(followed by *de wa nai*, meaning "it doesn't necessarily mean that")

あなたが悪いわけではない。

*Anata ga warui wake dewa nai*

It doesn't mean that you are wrong.

すべてあなたに賛成するわけではありません

*Subete anata ni sansai suru wake dewa arimasen*

It doesn't mean that I quite agree with you.

(followed by *da/desu*, meaning "it's natural that," "that's why")

それでみんな集っているわけですね

*Sore de minna atsumatte iru wake desu ne*

That's why they are all gathering, isn't it?

### 3. After *nai*-form of verb

彼女を手伝わないわけには行きません。

*Kanojo o tetsudawanai wake ni wa ikimasen*

I should not keep from helping her (I have to help her.)

### 4. After *ta* form of verb/adjective

仕事をやめたわけは、いいたくありません

*Shigoto o yameta wake wa itaku arimasen.*

I don't want to tell you why I quit my job.

子供がおとなしかったわけが分かりました

*Kodomo ga otonashikatta wake ga wakarimashita*

I understand why the child was quiet

必ずしもあなたの新しい提案に同意したわけではありません。

*Kanarazushimo anata no atarashii teian ni doi shita wake dewa arimasen.*

I don't necessarily agree to your new proposal

それで遅れたわけですね。

*Sore de okureta wake desu ne.*

That's why you were late, isn't it?

5. After adjectival noun + *na*

彼がずっと健康なわけは早寝早起きをしているからだ

*Kare ga zutto kenkō-na wake wa hayane hayaoki o shite iru kara da.*

The reason why he remains healthy is that he always goes to bed early and gets up early

別にそれが嫌いなわけではありません

*Betsu ni sore ga kirai-na wake dewa arimasen*

It doesn't mean that I particularly hate it

それではたいへんなわけだ。

*Sore dewa taihen-na wake da*

If that is the case, it will of course be difficult

6 After (adjectival) noun + *datta*

私たちはずっと無関心だったわけではありません。

*Watashi tachi wa zutto mukanshin datta wake dewa arimasen.*

We were not necessarily indifferent throughout.

そういう事情で消極的だったわけですね

*So na jyo de shokyoku teki datta wake desu ne*

You have a good reason to have been passive under the circumstances.

wo を

→ See o

234 • GRAMMATICAL FUNCTION WORDS

私は風邪にかかりやすい。

*Watashi wa kaze ni kakariyasui*

I am prone to catching colds.

彼は飲むと怒りやすくなる。

*Kare wa nomu to okoriyasuku naru.*

He is apt to get angry when he drinks.

このカメラは扱いやすい。

*Kono kamera wa atsukaiyasui*

This camera is easy to handle.

彼は親しくなりやすい人です。

*Kare wa shutashiku nariyasui hito desu*

He is a man who is easy to make friends with

• See also *nikui*

**yō** 用

SUFFIX MEANING: suitable for, for ( use)

1. After noun

この本は初心者用です。

*Kono hon wa shoshinsha yō desu*

This book is suitable for beginners

(*no* may be used between *yō* and the noun it modifies)

家庭用(の)洗剤はありますか。

*Katei yō (no) senzai wa arimasu ka*

Do you have detergent for home use?

登山用(の)靴を買いましたか。

*Tozan yō (no) kutsu o kaimashita ka.*

Did you buy shoes for mountain climbing?

**yō desu** ようです

PREDICATIVE PHRASE MEANING, seem to, look like, be likely to, such as, like, as, such as, to the effect

It is used to express a supposition the speaker makes based on observation. Its adjectival form is *yō-na* and its adverbial form is *yō ni*.

## 1. After dictionary form of verb/adjective

彼は外国へ旅行に行くようです。

*Kare wa gaikoku e ryoko ni iku yō desu.*

He looks like he will travel abroad (because he is carrying his suitcase).

その試験はやさしいようです。

*Sono shiken wa yasashii yō desu.*

The examination seems easy (since many people passed it).

彼女は仕事を辞めるようなことを言っていました。

*Kanojo wa shigoto o yameru yō-na koto o itte imashita.*

She said that she might quit her job. (I heard so).

もっと役に立つような道具を買いなさい。

*Motto yaku ni tatsu yō-na dogu o kaimasai.*

You should buy more useful tools.

その計画はあなたが思うようにはうまく行かないでしょう。

*Sono keikaku wa anata ga omou yō ni wa umaku ikanai desho.*

That plan will probably not work as well as you expect.

2. After *nai*-form of verb/adjective

彼女は何も知らないようです。

*Kanojo wa nani mo shiranai yō desu.*

*Ano yo-na utsukushii kimono o mita koto ga arimasen*

I've never seen such a beautiful kimono.

• See also *deshō*, *marude*, *mitai*, *rashii*, *sō desu*

## **yō ni** ように

ADVERBIAL PHRASE MEANING so as to, in order to, so that (can)

This *yo ni* differs from the adverbial form of *yo desu* mentioned above. The word or words before *yo ni* express a wish.

### 1. After dictionary form of verb

私にも分るようにゆっくり日本語を話して下さい

*Watashi ni mo wakaru yō ni yukkuri nihongo o hanashite kudasai.*

Please speak Japanese more slowly so that I can understand you too.

### 2. After *nai*-form of verb

飛行機に遅れないように早く出発しましょう

*Hikoki ni okurenai yō ni hayaku shuppatsu shimasho.*

Let's start early so as not to be late for the plane.

→ See also *naru*, *no ni*, *tame ni*

## **yō ni suru** ようにする

PREDICATIVE PHRASE MEANING make sure that, take care that, try to (do), make it a rule to (do)

The progressive form *yo ni shite iru* expresses an habitual action.

## 1. After dictionary form of verb

あす9時までにここに来るようにして下さい。

*Asu ku ji made ni koko ni kuru yō ni shite kudasai*

Please make sure that you come here by nine tomorrow

この頃は早寝早起きをするようにしています

*Kono goro wa hayane hayaoki o suru yō ni shite imasu.*

Recently I am going to bed and getting up early

毎日漢字をみつつ覚えるようにします。

*Mainichi kanji o mitsutsu oboeru yō ni shimasu.*

I'll make it a rule to learn three kanji every day.

2. After *nai*-form of verb

バスに遅れないようにして下さい。

*Basu ni okurenai yō ni shite kudasai.*

Please make sure that you don't miss the bus.

▶ See also *suru*

**yō ni iū** ように言う

PREDICATIVE PHRASE MEANING tell (somebody) to (do something)

## 1. After dictionary form of verb

きのう彼女に今日の3時にここへ来るように言いました。

*Kino kanojo ni kyō no san ji ni koko e kuru yō ni iimashita*

Yesterday I told her to come here at three o'clock today

2. After *nai*-form of verb

彼にあまり飲まないように言いなさい。

*Kare ni amari nomanai yō ni iinasai*

Tell him not to drink too much.

(replacing *tanomu* with *nu* changes the meaning to "ask [somebody] to [do something]")



When used toward a person of higher status or to whom one wishes to show respect, it should be followed by *desu*.

1. After noun + *de*

それでよろしいです。

***Sore de yoroshii desu.***

That will do

駅へ行くのにこの道でよろしいですか

***Eki e iku no ni kono michi de yoroshii desu ka.***

Is this the right street to the station?

2. After interrogative word + *demo*

いつでもよろしいですよ。

***Itsu demo yoroshii desu yo.***

Any time will be all right.

どちらでもよろしいです。

***Dochira demo yoroshii desu.***

Either will do.

3. After *te*-form of verb (+ *mo*)

電話を使ってもよろしい。

***Denwa o tsukattemo yoroshii.***

You may use the telephone.

もう帰ってよろしいですか。

***Mô kaette yoroshii desu ka***

Is it all right if I go home now?

ここでタバコを吸って(も)よろしいですか

***Koko de tabako o sutte(mo) yoroshii desu ka***

Is it all right if I smoke here?

バス停までついて行って(も)よろしいですよ

*Basutete made tsuite ite(mo) yoroshii desu yo.*

I'd be glad to accompany you to the bus stop.

4. After *ta*-form of verb + *hō ga*

やめた方がよろしいですよ。

*Yameta hō ga yoroshii desu yo*

It would be better to stop it.

5. In conditional *ba*-form

よろしければ映画を見に行きませんか。

*Yoroshikereba eiga o mi ni ikimasen ka.*

If you feel like it, would you like to go to a movie?

→ See also *hō ga ii, temo ii*

## **zaru o enai** ざるを得ない

PREDICATIVE PHRASE MEANING: cannot help (doing), cannot help but (do), be obliged to (do), have no choice but to (do)

1. After the stem of *nai*-form of verb

私は旅行する計画をあきらめざるを得ません。

*Watashi wa ryoko suru keikaku o akiramezaru o emasen.*

I am obliged to give up the plan to take a trip

あれには笑わざるを得ませんでした。

*Are ni wa warawazaru o emasen deshita*

I could not help laughing at that.

彼らに協力せざるを得ない。

*Karera ni kyoryoku sezaruru o enai.*

I have no choice but to cooperate with them

(note the irregular stem of *suru* is *se*)

**zenzen** 全然

ADVERB MEANING (not) at all, (not) in the least, (not) a bit, (not) anything, entirely, completely

1. Used with negative

(total negation)

日本語は全然書けません。

*Nihongo wa zenzen kakemasen*

I cannot write in Japanese at all

そのことについては全然知りません

*Sono koto ni tsuite wa zenzen shirimasen.*

I know nothing at all about it

彼女の言ったことは全然気にしていません

*Kanojo no itta koto wa zenzen ki ni shite imasen*

I don't care a bit about what she said

2. Used with affirmative

あなたの言うことは彼の言うことと全然違います

*Anata no iu koto wa kare no iu koto to zenzen chigaimasu*

What you say is entirely different from what he says

▶ See also *marude*, *matlaku*

**zu ni** ずに

PHRASE MEANING without (doing), not (do something) but (do another thing)

It is equivalent to *nai de*.

1 After the stem of *nai*-form of verb

あきらめずにがんばってください。

*Akiramezu ni ganbatte kudasai.*

Do your best and don't give up

チケットを見せずに会場に入ることはできません。

*Chiketto o misezu ni kaijo ni hairu koto wa dekimasen*

You cannot enter the hall without showing the ticket

彼は勉強もせずに遊んでいた。

*Kare wa benkyo mo sezu ni asonde ita.*

He was playing and didn't study

(note the irregular stem of *suru* is *se*)

## 2. Followed by the verb *sumu*

(meaning "can manage without [doing]," "not have to [do]")

銀行からお金を借りずにすみそうです

*Ginko kara o-kane o karizu ni sumisō desu*

I looks like we'll manage without borrowing money from the bank.

わざわざ東京まで行かずにすみました

*Wazawaza tokyo made ikazu ni sumimashita*

I didn't have to make a special trip to Tokyo

♦ See also *nai*

## **PART TWO**

# **Grammatical Explanations**

**ADJECTIVAL NOUNS** (also known as *na* adjectives)

Words in this category can function as adjectives, adverbs, or less often, as ordinary nouns in the subject or object of a sentence.

**Adjectival Noun Forms**

Most adjectival nouns are followed by *-na* before a noun they modify, though some are followed by *no* (refer to List of Common Adjectival Nouns below). When used as adverbs, or as complements that describe the subject or object, they are followed by *ni*.

NOUN FORM	ADJECTIVE FORM	ADVERB FORM
<i>shinsetsu</i> (kindness)	<i>shinsetsu-na</i> (kind)	<i>shinsetsu ni</i> (kindly)
<i>kirei</i> (beauty)	<i>kirei na</i> (beautiful)	<i>kirei ni</i> (beautifully)
<i>byōdō</i> (equality)	<i>byōdō no</i> (equal)	<i>byōdō ni</i> (equally)
<i>jiyū</i> (freedom)	<i>jiyū-na</i> (free)	<i>jiyū ni</i> (freely)
<i>muda</i> (waste)	<i>muda-na</i> (wasteful)	<i>muda ni</i> (wastefully)

**1. NOUN FORM**

*Watashi wa motto jiyū ga hoshu.*

I want more freedom.

*Amari no muda wa sakenakereba naranai.*

We have to avoid too much waste.

**2. ADJECTIVE FORM**

*Kare wa shinsetsu-na hito desu ne.*

He is a kind person, isn't he?

*Dare demo koko dewa byōdō no kenri ga aru.*

Everybody has equal rights here.

**3. ADVERB FORM**

*Kare wa watashi tachi ni shinsetsu ni shite kuremashita.*

He treated us kindly.

*Kono shashin wa kirei ni torete imasu.*

This photograph is taken beautifully.

**4. AS COMPLEMENT**

*Kanojo wa totemo kirei ni narimashita.*

## 252 • GRAMMATICAL EXPLANATIONS

*tekito-na* 適(当)な suitable, appropriate, proper  
*tokubetsu-na* 特別(な) special, particular, exceptional  
*tokui-na* 得意(な) strong (point of ability), in one's line  
*tozen no* 自然(の) natural, reasonable  
*yukai-na* 愉快(な) pleasant, enjoyable  
*yūmei-na* 有名(な) famous, well-known, noted  
*yushu-na* 優秀(な) excellent, superior  
*zettai no* 絶対(の) absolute, unconditional  
*zettaku-na* ぜいたく(な) luxurious, extravagant

Borrowed (foreign) adjectives can also be dealt with as other Japanese adjectival nouns.

*deriketo-na* デリケート(な) delicate  
*gojusu-na* ゴージャス(な) gorgeous  
*hotto-na* ホット(な) hot  
*hansamu-na* ハンサム(な) handsome

### ADJECTIVES (also known as *i*-adjectives)

*I*-adjectives are used to modify nouns which directly follow them, but are also used as predicates and thus can be conjugated. They conjugate depending on the word following and their function in the sentence.

#### Adjective Forms

Note that the adjective type of auxiliaries (*tai*, *nai*, and *rashii*) conjugate in the same manner as *i*-adjectives.

#### 1. DICTIONARY FORM

- As non past predicate

(Adding *desu* at the end makes it polite.)

*Kono ryōri wa taihen oishii desu.*

This dish is very tasty.

(Used as a present predicate in a quotation, *desu* does not follow.)

*Ano fuku wa yasui to omoimasu.*

I think that dress is cheap.

(In questions in direct speech, *desu* is used before *ka* or *ne*, while in questions in reported speech, *desu* is not used before [no] *ka* )

*Raishu no nichiyoobi wa isogashii desu ka.*

Are you busy next Sunday?

*Kyō wa totemo atsui desu ne.*

It's very hot today, isn't it?

*Kanojo ni dore ga ii (no) ka tazunevo.*

I will ask her which is good.

- As attributive adjective, modifying noun directly following

*Watashi wa totemo takai kamera o kaimashita*

I bought a very expensive camera

- As presumptive predicate, followed by *desho/kamoshirenai*

*Ashita wa samui deshō.*

It will probably be cold tomorrow

*Kono tabemono wa furui kamoshirenai*

This food may be stale.

- Preceding the following words and phrases, dealt with in Part I  
*aida, dake, desho, desu, dokoro de (wa) nai, dokoroku, hazu desu, hazu ga nai, ho, hodo, kagiri, kamoshirenai, kara, keredo(mo), koto, mitai (2), mono, na, nagura, nara, ni chigai nai, ni mo kakawarazu, no, node, no desu, no ni, rashu so desu, to, toki ni, tokoro, to shitemo, to sureba, tsumori desu, uchi ni, wake, yō desu, yori*

## 2. KU-FORM

This form is made by replacing the final *-i* with *-ku*. It is used in making the *te*-form and negative form, and functions in the various ways listed below.



- As adverb

*Kare wa itsumo isogashiku ugokimawatte imasu.*

He is always busily moving about

*Watashi tachi wa kyō tanoshiku gogo o sugoshimashita*

We spent this afternoon pleasantly.

- Describing the subject or object as a result of change

*Kanojo wa utsukushiku narimashita*

She became beautiful.

*Watashi o kanashiku sasenaide kudavat*

Please don't make me sad

- Preceding the following words and phrases, dealt with in Part I:  
*arimasen, nai, nakereba ikenai, nakereba naranaï, nakutemo  
yoi, naru, suru, te, temo ii*

### 3. NAI-FORM

This form expresses the non-past negation. It is made by adding *-nai* to the *ku*-form. *Nai* in turn conjugates like an *i*-adjective.

DICTIONARY FORM

*muzukashii*

*samui*

NAI-FORM (PLAIN)

*muzukashiku nai*

*samuku nai*

NAI-FORM (POLITE)

*muzukashiku nai desu*

*samuku nai desu*

- The functions are exactly the same as those of the dictionary form above, as *nai* is the dictionary form of the adjective *nai*. The *nai*-form can be followed by any words or phrases that follow the dictionary form.

*Kyō wa amari samuku nai desu ne*

Today isn't very cold, is it?

*Waruku nai to omoimasu.*

I think it is not bad (I don't think it is bad)

*Amari muzukashiku nai hon o katta ho ga ii desu*

It would be better for you to buy a book that is not very difficult

*Kanojo no iu koto wa tadashiku nai desho.*

Probably what she says is not right.

#### 4. TA-FORM

This form expresses past states and states that have continued up to the time of speaking. It is made by replacing the final *-i* with *-katta* (affirmative) or by adding *nakatta* to the *ku* form (negative).

DICT. FORM	PLAIN PAST (AFF.)	PLAIN PAST (NEG.)
<i>yoi</i>	<i>yokatta</i>	<i>yoku nakatta</i>
<i>iyogashii</i>	<i>iyogashikatta</i>	<i>iyogashiku nakatta</i>

- As simple past predicate

(Adding *desu* after the adjective makes it polite.)

*Watashi wa motto yukkuri shitakatta desu*

I wanted to stay longer

(In a quotation, *desu* is not used.)

*Kanojo wa yoku nakatta to itte imashita*

She said it was not good

(In questions in direct speech, *desu* is used before *ka* or *ne*, while in questions in reported speech, *desu* is not used before [no] *ka*.)

*Kyo wa totemo samukatta desu ne.*

It was very cold today, wasn't it?

*Kare ni nani ga yokatta no ka kikanakatta.*

I didn't ask him what was good (about it)

- Expressing state which has continued up to the time of speaking

*Nihongo wa watashi ni wa totemo oboenikukatta desu.*

Japanese has been very difficult for me to learn.

## 258 • GRAMMATICAL EXPLANATIONS

- See also *sore ni, te* in Part I

### 6. BA-FORM

This form expresses a present or past condition

It is made by replacing the final *-i* with *-kereba*. The negative of the *ba*-form is made by adding *nakereba* (*ba*-form of *nai*) to the *ku*-form. A future condition is expressed by the *ku*-form + *nareba*.

DICT. FORM	BA-FORM	NEG. OF BA FORM
<i>warui</i>	<i>warukereba</i>	<i>waruku nakereba</i>
<i>isogashii</i>	<i>isogashikereba</i>	<i>isogashiku nakereba</i>

*Tenki ga warukereba enki shimasho*

If the weather is bad, let's postpone it.

*Anata no tasuke ga nakereba dekimasen deshita*

Without your help, I couldn't have done it.

*Ima isogashiku nakereba o-hanashi shitai no desu ga*

If you are not busy now, I would like to talk with you.

- See also *ha, nara, tara, to* in Part I

### 7. TARA-FORM

This form expresses a present condition

It is made by adding *tara* to the stem of the *ta* form. The negative of the *tara*-form is made by adding *nakattara* (*tara* form of *nai*) to the *ku*-form. A past condition is expressed by the *ta*-form + *no nara*, and a future condition by the *ku* form + *nattara*.

DICT. FORM	TARA-FORM	NEG. OF TARA-FORM
<i>takai</i>	<i>takakattara</i>	<i>takaku nakattara</i>
<i>samui</i>	<i>samukattara</i>	<i>samuku nakattara</i>

Kenji is the youngest of the three

*Kono naka de dore ga mottomo yoi desu ka*

Which is the best of them?

## 11 EQUIVALENT DEGREE COMPARISON

*To onaji kurai/gurai*, which literally means "to the extent of similarity," is used in the affirmative, and *hodo* in the negative

*Katakana wa hiragana to onaji kurai oboeru no ga muzukashii.*

Katakana is as difficult as hiragana to learn

*Watashi wa kare hodo kashikoku arimasen*

I am not as clever as he

- Comparison of adjectival nouns and adverbs is made in the same manner as above
- See also *ho*, *hodo*, *kurai*, *mottomo*, *yori* in Part I

## List of Common Adjectives

*abunai* 危ない dangerous

*akarui* 明るい bright, cheerful

*amai* 甘い sweet, superficially optimistic, not strict

*atarashii* 新しい new, fresh, up-to-date

*atatakai* 暖かい warm

*atsui* 熱い, 暑い hot

*buatsui* 分厚い thick, bulky

*chisai* 小さい small, low (of volume)

*chikai* 近い near, close

*furui* 古い old (not used of humans)

*futoi* 太い fat, bold

*hayai* 速い fast, quick, rapid, speedy, prompt

*hayai* 早い early

*hazukashii* 恥かしい shy, bashful

- hirai* 広い wide, broad, spacious, vast  
*hosoi* 細い thin, slender  
*ii* いい good, nice, fine, right, suitable  
*isogashii* 忙しい busy  
*itai* 痛い painful, sore  
*kanashii* 悲しい sad, sorrowful  
*karui* 軽い light, slight (of illness)  
*kashikoi* かしこい smart, clever, wise  
*katai* かたい stiff, tight, hard  
*kawaii* かわいい lovely, cute, tiny  
*kitanai* 汚い dirty, foul, nasty  
*kowai* 恐い afraid, fearful  
*kurai* 暗い dark, gloomy  
*mujikai* 短い short, brief  
*muzukashii* むずかしい difficult, troublesome  
*nagai* 長い long  
*nai* ない there is not, does not exist  
*nemui* 眠い sleepy, drowsy  
*nikui* にくい hateful, hard (to do)  
*oishii* おいしい tasty, delicious  
*okashii* おかしい funny, crazy, improper  
*omoi* 重い heavy, serious (of illness)  
*omoshiroi* 面白い interesting, amusing, enjoyable  
*oi* 多い many, much, numerous, frequent  
*ôkii* 大きい big, large, loud, tall  
*osoroshii* 恐ろしい fearful, terrible, horrible  
*otonashii* おとなしい obedient, tame, well-behaved, quiet  
*sabishii* 寂しい lonely  
*samui* 寒い chilly, cold (of the weather)  
*semai* 狭い narrow, small  
*subarashii* 素晴らしい wonderful, excellent, marvelous, splendid  
*sukunai* 少ない a few, a little  
*suzushii* 涼しい cool (of the weather)  
*tadashii* 正しい correct, accurate, right

## 264 • GRAMMATICAL EXPLANATIONS

*totsuzen* 突然 suddenly, abruptly, unexpectedly

*zenbu* 全部 all

*zenzen* 全然 (not) at all, completely

(The above can be used as adjectives as well, by adding *no* before the noun they modify.)

### **Ku-form of Adjectives Used as Adverbs**

*hayaku* はやく early, fast, quickly, rapidly

*hidoku* ひどく badly, severely, terribly

*kuwashiku* 詳しく in detail

*mitsukaku* みじかく briefly

*sugoku* すごく terribly, awfully

### **Adjectival Nouns + *Ni*, Used as Adverbs**

*gutaiteki ni* 具体的に concretely, definitely

*hontō ni* 本当に really, truly

*jyū ni* 自由に freely

*jōzu ni* 上手に skillfully

*kantan ni* 簡単に easily

*omo ni* 主に chiefly, mainly

### **Onomatopoeic Words (+ *To*), Used as Adverbs**

(The following are words that imitate sound or voice, called *giseigo*.)

*dokidoki (to)*ドキドキ (heart beats) fast

*gavagava (to)*かやかや (talk) noisily

*zaza (to)*さあさあ (rain) heavily

### **Mimicry Words (+ *To*), Used as Adverbs**

(The following are words that imitate action or movement, called *gitaigo*.)

*kotsukotsu (to)*コツコツ (work) steadily

*nikoniko (to)*ニコニコ (smile) smilingly

*wakuwaku (to)*わくわく (excite) excitedly

## CONJUNCTIONS

## To Connect Nouns

## 1. TO

- Between nouns: . . . and . . .

*Watashi wa tennis to sukii ga tokui desu*

I am good at tennis and sking

## 2. YA

- Between nouns: . . . and . . .

*Hana-na toki wa shinbun ya zasshi o yomimasu*

When I'm free, I read things such as newspapers and magazines

## 3. MO

- After each noun: . . . and (also) . . .

*Kunoyo wa nihongo mo chūgokugo mo hanashimasu*

She speaks Japanese and also Chinese (both Japanese and Chinese).

## 4. KA

- Between nouns: . . . or

*Kohii ka o-cha o nomitai*

I want to drink coffee or green tea.

## To Connect Sentences

## 1. COMMON CONJUNCTIVE WORDS

*daga* だが but, however (written language)

*dakara* だから and so, therefore, that's why

*dewa* では then, if so (informal form is *ja*)

*keredo(mo)* けれども but (informal)

*shikashi* しかし but (formal)

*sorekara* それから and, and then, after that, since then

*soreni* それに moreover, besides

*toki (ni)* 時 (に) when

## COUNTERS

Japanese uses various counters, depending on the nature or shape of the object being counted.

### List of Common Counters

*bai* 倍 times (multiplicative number)

*ban* 番 No. (number or ranking)

*banme* 番め (ordinal number)

*dai* 台 vehicles or machines

*doru* ドル dollars

*en* 円 yen

*fun* 分 minutes

*gatsu* 月 months (of the year)

*hai* 杯 cups or glasses

*hiki* 匹 small animals, fish, worms, or insects

*hon* 本 long objects like sticks, bottles, etc.

*ji* 時 o'clock

*jikan* 時間 hours

*ka* 日 days (of the month from the second to the tenth)

*kagetsu* ヶ月 months (as the unit)

*kai* 回 times (frequency)

*kira* キロ kilometers or kilograms

*ko* 個 objects of small, round, or non specific shape

*mai* 枚 thin or flat objects, like paper, boards, slices, etc.

*nen* 年 years (as the date and unit)

*nichi* 日 days (for one day or more than ten days, or for days of the month after the tenth)

*nin* 人 persons

*sui* 才 years old

*satsu* 冊 books, volumes

*shūkan* 週間 weeks

*wa* 羽 birds



## Usage of Counters

1. IN A SENTENCE, THE NUMBER + COUNTER IS GENERALLY PLACED AFTER THE NOUN (+ PARTICLE) TO WHICH IT REFERS

*Ie no mae ni kuruma ga ni dai tomatte imasu*

Two cars are parked in front of the house

*Koko ni pen ga ni hon to kami ga ni mai arimasu.*

Here are two pens and two sheets of paper

*Kôhii o ni hai nomimashita.*

I drank two cups of coffee.

*Eki made takushii de ni juppun kakarimasu.*

It takes twenty minutes to the station by taxi.

2. WHEN PRECEDING A NOUN, THE NUMBER + COUNTER IS FOLLOWED BY *NO*

*San nin no seito ga keseki desu*

Three students are absent.

*Migi kara san banme no seki ni suwatte kudasan*

Please sit down in the third seat from the right

3. IN A QUESTION (HOW MANY/HOW MUCH), *NAN* + COUNTER IS USED

*Isshukan ni hon o nan satsu gurui yomimasu ka*

About how many books do you read in a week?

*Hagaki o nan mai motte imasu ka.*

How many postcards do you have?

*Kyô wa nan nichi desu ka*

What day of the month is today?

- Note the following euphonic changes after *nan*

*nan bon* 何本 How many sticks

*nan bai* 何杯 How many cups

*nan biki* 何匹 How many animals

*nan pun* 何分 How many minutes

5. DAYS (OF THE MONTH) (*ka* 日)

1 <i>tsuttachi</i>	6 <i>muika</i>
2 <i>futsuka</i>	7 <i>nanoka</i>
3 <i>mikka</i>	8 <i>yōka</i>
4 <i>yokka</i>	9 <i>kokonoka</i>
5 <i>itsuka</i>	10 <i>tōka</i>

6. DAYS (AS A UNIT) (*nichi, ka* 日)

1 <i>ichinichi</i>	6 <i>muika</i>
2 <i>futsuka</i>	7 <i>nanoka</i>
3 <i>mikka</i>	8 <i>yōka</i>
4 <i>yokka</i>	9 <i>kokonoka</i>
5 <i>itsuka</i>	10 <i>tōka</i>

7. MONTHS (AS A UNIT) (*kagetsu* ヵ月)

1 <i>ikkagetsu</i>	6 <i>rokkagetsu</i>
2 <i>nikagetsu</i>	7 <i>nanakagetsu</i>
3 <i>sankagetsu</i>	8 <i>hachikagetsu</i>
4 <i>yonkagetsu</i>	9 <i>kyukagetsu</i>
5 <i>gokagetsu</i>	10 <i>jukkagetsu</i>

8. KILOGRAMS OR KILOMETERS (*kiro* キロ)

1 <i>ichikiro</i>	6 <i>rokkiro</i>
2 <i>nikiro</i>	7 <i>nanakiro</i>
3 <i>sankiro</i>	8 <i>hachikiro</i>
4 <i>yonkiro</i>	9 <i>kyukiro</i>
5 <i>gokiro</i>	10 <i>jukkiro</i>

9. SMALL, ROUND, OR NON-SPECIFIC OBJECTS (*ko* こ)

1 <i>ikko</i>	6 <i>rokko</i>
2 <i>niko</i>	7 <i>nanako</i>
3 <i>sanko</i>	8 <i>hachiko</i>
4 <i>yonko</i>	9 <i>kyuko</i>
5 <i>goko</i>	10 <i>jukko</i>

10. PERSONS (*nin* 人)

1 <i>hitori</i>	6 <i>rokunin</i>
2 <i>futari</i>	7 <i>nananin/shichinin</i>
3 <i>sannin</i>	8 <i>hachinin</i>
4 <i>yōnin</i>	9 <i>kyūnin/kunin</i>
5 <i>gonin</i>	10 <i>jūnin</i>

11. BOOKS, VOLUMES (*satsu* 冊)

1 <i>issatsu</i>	6 <i>rokusatsu</i>
2 <i>nisatsu</i>	7 <i>nanasatsu</i>
3 <i>sansatsu</i>	8 <i>hassatsu</i>
4 <i>yonsatsu</i>	9 <i>kyūsatsu</i>
5 <i>gosatsu</i>	10 <i>jussatsu</i>

12. BIRDS (*wa* 羽)

1 <i>ichiwa</i>	6 <i>rokuwa</i>
2 <i>niwa</i>	7 <i>nanawa</i>
3 <i>sanba</i>	8 <i>hachiwa</i>
4 <i>yōwa</i>	9 <i>kyūwa</i>
5 <i>gowa</i>	10 <i>juppa</i>

13. YEARS OLD (*sai* 才)

1 <i>issai</i>	6 <i>rokusai</i>
2 <i>nisai</i>	7 <i>nanasai</i>
3 <i>sansai</i>	8 <i>hassai</i>
4 <i>yonsai</i>	9 <i>kyūsai</i>
5 <i>gosai</i>	6 <i>jussai</i>

## EUPHONIC CHANGES

Only the consonant-stem verbs have euphonic changes, and these occur only when the *te*-, *ta*-, or *tara*-form of the verb is made. There are three types of euphonic changes: the *i*-sound change, the gemi-

replace it with *-n*. The following *te* and *ta* become *de* and *da* respectively

DICT. FORM	TE-FORM	TA-FORM
<i>asobu</i> (to play)	<i>asonde</i>	<i>asonda</i>
<i>manabu</i> (to learn)	<i>manande</i>	<i>mananda</i>
<i>nomu</i> (to drink)	<i>nonde</i>	<i>nonda</i>
<i>shinu</i> (to die)	<i>shinde</i>	<i>shinda</i>
<i>yomu</i> (to read)	<i>yonde</i>	<i>yonda</i>

### INTRANSITIVE AND TRANSITIVE VERBS

Verbs which do not or cannot take a direct object are called intransitive verbs. Verbs which can take a direct object are called transitive verbs. The objects are mainly followed by the particles *o*, *wa*, *ni*, or *ga*. However, the object before any Japanese transitive verb can be freely dropped

"*Akari o keshimayu ka* " "*Keshanaide kudavat* "

"Shall I turn off the light?" "Please don't turn (it) off "

"*Kino poru ni aimashita ka* " "*Aimasen deshita* "

"Did you meet Paul yesterday?" "I didn't meet (him) "

"*Watashi wa gorufu ga dekimasen* " "*Watashi mo dekimasen* "

"I cannot play golf " "I can't play (it), either "

### List of Pairs of Intransitive and Transitive Verbs

Pairs of intransitive and transitive verbs are listed below, but as explained above, the transitive verbs of these pairs do not necessarily take a direct object.

#### INTRANSITIVE

*agaru* 上がる (to go up)

*aku* 開く (to open)

*aturu* 当たる (to hit)

#### TRANSITIVE

*ageru* 上げる (to raise)

*akeru* 開ける (to open)

*ateru* 当てる (to hit)

<i>butsukaru</i> ぶつかる (to bump)	<i>butsukeru</i> ぶつける (to bump)
<i>deru</i> 出る (to go out)	<i>dasu</i> 出す (to let out)
<i>fueru</i> 増える (to increase)	<i>fuyasu</i> 増やす (to increase)
<i>hairu</i> 入る (to go in)	<i>ireru</i> 入れる (to put in)
<i>hajimaru</i> 始まる (to begin)	<i>hajimeru</i> 始める (to begin)
<i>hanareru</i> 離れる (to separate)	<i>hanasu</i> 離す (to let go)
<i>hazureru</i> 外れる (to come off)	<i>hazusu</i> 外す (to remove)
<i>hieru</i> 冷える (to grow cold)	<i>hiyasu</i> 冷やす (to cool)
<i>hirogaru</i> 広がる (to spread)	<i>hirogeru</i> 広げる (to spread)
<i>kaeru</i> 帰る (to go back)	<i>kaesu</i> 帰す (to let go back)
<i>kakureru</i> 隠れる (to be hidden)	<i>kakusu</i> 隠す (to hide)
<i>kawaru</i> 変わる (to change)	<i>kaeru</i> 変える (to change)
<i>kieru</i> 消える (to be put out)	<i>kesu</i> 消す (to put out)
<i>kimaru</i> 決まる (to be decided)	<i>kimeru</i> 決める (to decide)
<i>kireru</i> 切れる (to be cut)	<i>kiru</i> 切る (to cut)
<i>koboreru</i> こぼれる (to spill)	<i>kobosu</i> こぼす (to spill)
<i>kowareru</i> 壊れる (to break down)	<i>kowasu</i> 壊す (to break)
<i>magaru</i> 曲がる (to bend)	<i>mageru</i> 曲げる (to bend)
<i>matomaru</i> まとまる (to be united/arranged)	<i>matomeru</i> まとめる (to unite/arrange)
<i>mawaru</i> 回る (to rotate)	<i>mawasu</i> 回す (to rotate)
<i>mazaru</i> 混ざる (to be mixed)	<i>mazeru</i> 混ぜる (to mix)
<i>michuru</i> 満ちる (to become full)	<i>mitasu</i> 満たす (to fill)
<i>mitsukaru</i> 見つかる (to be found)	<i>mitsukeru</i> 見つける (to find)
<i>moreru</i> もれる (to leak)	<i>morasu</i> もらす (to let leak)
<i>mukeru</i> むける (to peel)	<i>muku</i> むく (to peel)
<i>muku</i> 向く (to face)	<i>mukeru</i> 向ける (to turn)
<i>nakunaru</i> なくなる (to be lost)	<i>nakusu</i> なくす (to lose)
<i>narabu</i> 並ぶ (to be lined up)	<i>naraberu</i> 並べる (to line up)
<i>nokoru</i> 残る (to be left over)	<i>nokosu</i> 残す (to leave)
<i>nobiru</i> 伸びる (to grow long)	<i>nobasu</i> 伸ばす (to lengthen)
<i>nobiru</i> 延びる (to be postponed)	<i>nobasu</i> 延ばす (to postpone)

*noru* 乗る (to ride/get on)

*nukeru* 抜ける (to fall out)

*ochuru* 落ちる (to fall)

*okiru* 起きる (to get up)

*oreru* 折れる (to break in two)

*oriru* 降りる (to get down)

*owaru* 終わる (to be over)

*sagaru* 下がる (to go down/off)

*sameru* さめる (to get cold)

*shimaru* 閉まる (to close)

*tamuru* 貯まる (to be saved up)

*tasukaru* 助かる (to be rescued)

*tatsu* 立つ (to stand up)

*tokeru* 溶ける (to melt)

*tomaru* 止まる (to stop)

*toreru* 取れる (to come off)

*tsuzuku* 続く (to continue)

*tsuku* 点く (to be lighted)

*tsumaru* 詰まる (to be packed)

*tsunaguru* つながる (to connect)

*tsutawaru* 伝わる (to spread)

*umareru* 生まれる (to be born)

*yakeru* 焼ける (to bake)

*yasumu* 休む (to take a rest)

*waku* 沸く (to boil)

*wareru* 割れる (to crack)

*noseru* 乗せる (to give a ride)

*nuku* 抜く (to pull out)

*otosu* 落とす (to drop)

*okosu* 起こす (to wake up)

*oru* 折る (to break off/fold)

*orosu* 降ろす (to take down)

*oeru* 終える (to finish)

*sageru* 下げる (to lower)

*samasu* さます (to cool)

*shimeru* 閉める (to close)

*tameru* 貯める (to save up)

*tasukeru* 助ける (to rescue)

*tateru* 立てる (to stand)

*tokasu* 溶かす (to melt)

*tomeru* 止める (to stop)

*toru* 取る (to remove)

*tsuzukeru* 続ける (to continue)

*tsukeru* 点ける (to light)

*tsumeru* 詰める (to pack)

*tsunagu* つなぐ (to connect)

*tsutaeru* 伝える (to tell)

*umu* 生む (to give birth to)

*yaku* 焼く (to bake)

*yasumeru* 休める (to rest)

*wakasu* 沸かす (to boil)

*waru* 割る (to crack)

## NOUNS

Japanese nouns have no gender or cases in themselves. Case is indicated by a particle. There is also no distinction between singular

and plural nouns. However, certain suffixes such as *tachi* may be added after a pronoun to indicate the plural.

## Types of Nouns

### 1. CONJUNCTIVE FORM AS NOUN

There are several verbs whose conjunctive forms can be dealt with as nouns.

DICT. FORM OF VERB	CONJUNCTIVE FORM AS NOUN
<i>hajimeru</i> (to begin)	<i>hajime</i> (the beginning)
<i>hareru</i> (to clear up)	<i>hare</i> (good weather)
<i>kangaeru</i> (to think)	<i>kangae</i> (a thought/ideal/opinion)
<i>kotaeru</i> (to answer)	<i>kotae</i> (an answer)
<i>odoroku</i> (to be surprised)	<i>odoroki</i> (a surprise)
<i>owaru</i> (to end)	<i>owari</i> (an end)
<i>tasukeru</i> (to help)	<i>tasuke</i> (a help)

### 2. ADJECTIVE STEM AS NOUN

There are several adjectives whose stems can be dealt with as nouns, though some require a specific suffix.

DICT. FORM OF ADJECTIVE	STEM AS NOUN
<i>akai</i> (be red)	<i>aka</i> (the color red)
<i>shiroi</i> (be white)	<i>shiro</i> (the color white)
<i>takai</i> (be high)	<i>taka-sa</i> (height)
<i>tanoshii</i> (be pleasant)	<i>tanoshi mi</i> (pleasure)

### 3. COMPOUND NOUNS

- Noun + noun  
*kyūkō ressha* express train  
*gyūjutsu kakushin* technological innovation
- Conjunctive form of verb + noun

## 278 • GRAMMATICAL EXPLANATIONS

*wasure-mono* forgotten item

*de-guchi* exit, way out

- Stem of adjective + noun

*chika-michi* shortcut

- Noun + conjunctive form of verb

*hana-mi* flower viewing

- Conjunctive form of verb + conjunctive form of another verb

*hiki-dashi* drawer

- Stem of adjective + conjunctive form of verb

*yasu-uri* bargain sale

- Noun + stem of adjective

*ki-naga* leisurely attitude

- Stem of adjective + stem of another adjective

*hoso-naga* slenderness

- Double noun

*hito-bito* people

## POLITE LANGUAGE

In Japanese two kinds of polite language are very commonly used. Respectful language shows respect toward a person to whom or about whom the speaker is talking, and humble language indicates the speaker's humbleness. Caution is advised regarding the overuse of polite language, as it can create a sense of distance between the speaker and those being addressed.

### Prefixes and Suffixes

#### 1. O-

Noun prefix, mainly for words of Japanese origin

*o kasan*

mother (of the other person)

*o-miyage*

a souvenir

*o-namae*

the name (of the other person)

*o-shigoto*

the work (of the other person)

*o-tenki*

the weather

*o-tōsan*

father (of the other person)



2. **GO-**

Noun prefix, mainly for nouns of Chinese origin

<i>go-jitaku</i>	home (of the other person)
<i>go-kurō</i>	hardship (of the other person)
<i>go-seikō</i>	success (of the other person)
<i>go-jusho</i>	address (of the other person)
<i>go-shujin</i>	husband (of the other person)

3. **-SAN**

Suffix added to family or first names, or nouns expressing relation, status, or condition

<i>Tanaka-san</i>	Mr. (Ms.) Tanaka
<i>Tarō-san</i>	Taro
<i>oji-san</i>	uncle or an oldish gentleman
<i>oba-san</i>	aunt or an oldish lady
<i>kachō-san</i>	the chief of a section
<i>o-tsukare-san*/</i> <i>go-kurō-san*</i>	tiredness (You worked hard, thank you.)

(\*set phrases for thanking somebody after finishing a job)

4. **-SAMA**

A suffix used in the same way as *-san*, but more respectful and formal

<i>Yamada-sama</i>	Mr. (Ms.) Yamada
<i>o-kyaku-sama</i>	customer or visitor
<i>dochira-sama/</i> <i>donata-sama</i>	who

**Polite Auxiliary Verbs**1. **DESU**

The polite equivalent of the auxiliary verb *da*

2. **-MASU**

The polite auxiliary verb used for making the *masu*-form of verbs

**Dochira**

This is the polite equivalent of *doko* (where), *dore* (which), and *dare* (who). Which meaning it carries must be determined by context (and can at times be confusing).

**PREPOSITIONS**

Common English prepositions are generally expressed by post-positional particles or phrases in Japanese. When a post-positional phrase using particles precedes a noun and is used to modify it, as a rule the *ni* or *de* in the phrase is replaced with *no*. If *made* or *kara* are used in the phrase, they must be followed by *no*.

Compare the following two sentences:

*Sono hon wa kaban no naka ni tremashita.*

I put that book in the bag.

*Kaban no naka no hon o nakushimashita.*

I lost the book that was in the bag.

(*no naka ni* becomes *no naka no* as it is used to modify the noun [*hon*] which follows)

**English Prepositions Expressed in Japanese****1. ABOVE**

- *no ue de/ni*: higher than

*Ima kumo no ue ni imasu.*

We are above the clouds now.

- *ijō*: to a greater degree than

*Tesuto no ten wa heikin ijō desu.*

My test scores are above average.

**2. ACROSS**

- *o yokogitte*: crossing from one side to the other side of

*Obasan ga doro o yokogitte aruite imasu yo.*

An old woman is walking across the road

- *no muko ni* on the opposite side of  
*Shiyakusho wa ano ginkō no mukō ni arimasu.*  
 The city office is on the other side of that bank

### 3. AFTER

- *(no) ato de/ni* the time that follows  
*Shigoto no ato de o-cha o nomo.*  
 Let's have tea after work.  
*Kaimono o shita ato de eiga o miyo.*  
 Let's see a movie after doing the shopping.  
*Anata no ato de kekkō desu*  
 After you is fine

### 4. ALONG

- *ni sotte* or *o*: parallel to the length of  
*Tokidoki kaigan ni sotte sanpo shimasu*  
 I sometimes take a walk along the beach
- *o*: from one end to the other end of  
*Kono tōri o iku to kōen ga aru.*  
 If you go along this street, you will find a park

### 5. AMONG

- *no naka de/ni* in the middle of/being one of  
*San satsu no naka de kore ga ichiban suki desu*  
 I like this best among the three (books)
- *no aida de/ni*: in the group of  
*Sore wa karera no aida de sude ni giron sureta.*  
 It was already discussed among them.

### 6. AT

- *ni* time  
*San ji ni aimasho.*

What did you buy for her?

- *ni* purpose

*Mai asa sanpo ni ikimasu.*

I go for a walk every morning

- *ni* occasion

*Tanjobi ni kore o moratta.*

I was given this for my birthday.

- *kan* or *no aida*: period of time

*Ni nen kan nihon ni imashita.*

I was in Japan for two years.

- *no tame ni* (modifies verbs): benefit of someone/thing

*Kanojo no tame ni parti o shimasu*

We'll give a party for her.

- *e* or *ni*: destination or direction

*Asu tōkyō e dekakemasu.*

I'm leaving for Tokyo tomorrow

- *ni totte* semantic subject of verb in the infinitive

*Kanji o oboeru no wa watashi ni totte muzukashii*

It is difficult for me to learn kanji

- *ni wa*, someone for whom some state is excessive

*Kore wa watashi ni wa takasugiru*

This is too expensive for me.

- *de* price

*Kore o sen en de kaimashita.*

I bought this for one thousand yen.

## 18. FROM

- *kara*: starting point

*Shinkansen wa kono eki kara demasu*

The shinkansen starts from this station

- *kara* point in time something starts

*Mise wa ku ji kara aite iru.*

The store is open from nine o'clock

- *kara*: material

288 • GRAMMATICAL EXPLANATIONS

*Sake wa kome kara tsukurareru*

Sake is made from rice

- *de*: cause

*Ojisan wa gan de shinimashita*

My grandfather died of cancer.

19. IN

- *ni*: at some time during

*Go gatsu ni kare wa nihon ni kimasu*

He'll come to Japan in May.

- *ni*: place of existence

*Ani wa kyoto ni sunde imasu.*

My brother lives in Kyoto.

- *de*: place where an action is performed

*Kare wa heya de nete iru.*

He is sleeping in his room.

- *de*: place where an event is held

*Konsato wa ano hōru de arimasu*

The concert is given in that hall.

- *no naka de/ni*: within an enclosed space

*Kamera wa kaban no naka ni aru*

The camera is in the bag.

- *de*: method or means

*Nihongo de hanasemasu ka.*

Can you speak in Japanese?

- *ni*: direction toward which an action is directed

*Karera wa ano hokō ni itta.*

They went in that direction.

20. INTO

- *no naka e*: toward the inside of

*Inu ga heya no naka e hatte kita*

A dog came into the room.

- *ni*: result of a change

*Kore o nihongo ni naoshite kudasai.*

Please put this into Japanese.

## 21. NEAR

- *no chikaku de/ni*: close to

*Eki no chikaku ni yasui hōteru wa arimasu ka*

Is there a cheap hotel near the station?

## 22. OF

- *no*: belonging or in relation to

*Kuruma no taiya ga panku shita.*

My car has a flat tire.

- *no*: semantic object/subject of a noun expressing action

*Sono imi no setsumei wa muzukashisugiru.*

The explanation of the meaning is too difficult.

- *no*: apposition

*Watashi wa kōbe no machi ga suki desu.*

I like the city of Kobe.

## 23. ON

- *ni*: at the time of

*Nan yōbi ni koraremasu ka.*

On what day can you come?

- *ni/de*: on the surface of

*Kabe ni kirei-na e ga aru.*

There is a beautiful picture on the wall.

- *no ue de/ni*: on the horizontal surface of

*Jisho wa tsukue no ue ni aru.*

The dictionary is on the desk.

## 24. ONTO

- *no ue e/ni*: toward the surface of

*Neko ga tēburu no ue e tobiagatta.*

A cat jumped onto the table.

## 25. OVER

- *no ue de/ni*: in a higher position  
*Sono kaikyō no ue ni hashi ga dekita*  
 A bridge was built over the strait
- *ori takaku*: higher than  
*Ano kikyū wa kumo yori takaku tonde iru*  
 That balloon is flying over the clouds
- *o koete*: to the far side of  
*Neko ga hei o koete nigeta.*  
 A cat ran away over the fence
- *no mukō de/ni*: on the other side of  
*Kanojo wa kono doro no mukō ni sunde imasu*  
 She lives on the other side of this road
- *ijō*: more than  
*Hyaku mai ijō shū du o motte imasu*  
 I have over one hundred CDs.

## 26. SINCE

- *kara* or *irai*: from a point in past time  
*Senshu no nichiyōbi kara byōki desu.*  
 I've been sick since last Sunday  
*Kanojo to saigo ni atte kara ni nen ni narimasu*  
 It is two years since I saw her last
- *no toki kara*: from a point in past time  
*Watashi tachi wa gakusei no toki kara tomodachi desu*  
 We've been friends since we were students.

## 27. THROUGH

- *o totte*: in one side and out the other side of  
*Densha ga nagai tonneru o totte kita*  
 The train came through the long tunnel
- *no aida*: from the beginning to the end of  
*Fuyu no aida shinshū de soku o shimasu*  
 I'll ski in Shinshū through the winter

- *made*: up to and including

*Getsuyōbi kara kin'yōbi made hatarakimasu.*

I work from Monday through Friday

## 28. THROUGHOUT

- *no aida (zutto)* or *ju*: from start to finish

*Gakusei jidai no aida zutto arubaito o shita.*

I worked part-time throughout my school days.

## 29. TO

- *ni*: indirect object

*Anata ni sore o ugemasu.*

I'll give that to you.

- *ni* or *e* or *made*: destination/direction

*Tokyō ni ikimasu.*

I'm going to Tokyo.

- *made*: time when an action is stopped

*Ju ji kara go ji made hatarakimasu.*

I work from ten to five.

## 30. TOWARD

- *no hō e*: direction

*Kare wa eki no hō e ikimashita.*

He went toward the station

## 31. UNDER

- *no shita de/ni*: in/to a lower place than

*Teburu no shita ni inu ga imasu*

A dog is under the table

- *miman* or *ika de/ni*: less than

*Ju hassai miman no hito wa haitremasen*

People under eighteen may not enter

(As explained above, when the phrase is used to modify a noun immediately following it, *no* is used in place of *ni* )



### 32. UNTIL

- *made*: up to  
*Asa made hon o yonde imashita.*  
 I was reading books till morning

### 33. WITH

- *to issho ni*: accompanied by  
*Anata to issho ni ikitai desu.*  
 I want to go with you.
- *de* or *o tsukatte*: means or method  
*Enpitsu o tsukatte kudasai.*  
 Please use a pencil.
- *de*: cause  
*Kinō wa kaze de nete imashita.*  
 I was in bed with a cold yesterday
- *no aru*: character of  
*Kare wa yūmoa no aru hito desu.*  
 He is a man with a sense of humor
- *no tsuita*: attached, possessing  
*Akai raberu no tsuita shohin ga bagen desu.*  
 The items with red labels are bargains
- *de*: material for covering  
*Fuji-san wa yuki de owarete iru.*  
 Mt. Fuji is covered with snow.

## PRONOUNS

### Personal Pronouns

Japanese personal pronouns are frequently omitted except when it is not easy to guess who is being referred to. In general, the name of a person or his/her position or occupation followed by the polite suffix *-san* is commonly used instead of a personal pronoun. Case is given to the personal pronoun by adding specific particles *wa*, *ga*, *o*, *ni*, or *no*.

I	<i>watashi, boku/ore</i> (male)
we	<i>watashi tachi, boku/ore tachi</i> (male)
you (sing.)	<i>anata kimi</i> (informal)
you (pl.)	<i>anata tachi, kimi tachi</i> (informal)
he	<i>kare, kono/sono/ano hito</i>
she	<i>kanojo, kono/sono/ano hito</i>
they	<i>karera, kono/sono/ano hito tachi</i>

### Demonstrative Nouns

These pronouns become *kono*, *sono*, and *ano* respectively before nouns they modify.

this, these	<i>kore, kochira</i> (polite)
it, they, that, those	<i>sore, sochira</i> (polite)
that, those (over there)	<i>are, achira</i> (polite)

The following are used for expressing place and direction (combined with the particles *ni*, *de*, *e*, *kara*, or *made*)

this place, here	<i>koko</i>
that place, there	<i>soko</i>
that place, over there	<i>asoko</i>
this way (direction/side)	<i>kochira</i>
that way (direction/side)	<i>sochira</i>
that way over there (direction/side)	<i>achira</i>
which way (direction/side)	<i>dochira</i>

- See also *are*, *kore*, *sore* in Part I

### VERBS

Japanese verbs change form not according to person or the number of the subject, but according to the verbs, auxiliaries, particles, or other

function words which follow the verb. There are three types of regular verbs and two irregular verbs. The dictionary form of all verbs ends with *-u*

### ***Iru-Verbs***

The dictionary form always ends with *iru*. The verbs listed below look like *iru*-verbs but actually conjugate as consonant-stem verbs.

*hairu* 入る to enter

*hashiru* 走る to run

*kiru* 切る to cut

*shiru* 知る to know

*iru* 要る to need

### **List of Common *Iru-Verbs***

*dekiru* できる can (do), to complete

*kariru* 借りる to borrow

*miru* 見る to see, look, watch

*okiru* 起きる to get up, wake up

*ochiru* 落ちる to fall, come down, crash

*shinjiru* 信じる to believe (in), trust

### ***Eru-Verbs***

The dictionary form always ends with *-eru*. The verbs listed below look like *eru*-verbs but actually conjugate as consonant-stem verbs.

*keru* 蹴る to kick

*shaberu* しゃべる to speak, chat

*suberu* すべる to slip, slide

*kaeru* 帰る to go back, come back

*neru* 練る to elaborate, knead

### **List of Common *Eru-Verbs***

*ageru* あげる to give, raise, do (something) for others

- akeru* 開ける to open  
*akirameru* あきらめる to give up  
*dekakeru* 出かける to go out, set out  
*deru* 出る to go out, come out, leave, graduate, appear  
*hareru* 晴れる to clear up  
*ireru* 入れる to put in, insert  
*kikoeru* 聞こえる to be heard, be audible  
*kotaeru* 答える to answer  
*kowareru* 壊れる to break down, get out of order  
*kureru* くれる to be given, get a profit by an action  
*mueru* 見える to be seen, be visible, appear (come)  
*miseru* 見せる to show, let (somebody) see  
*neru* 寝る to sleep, go to bed  
*noberu* 述べる to describe  
*obueru* 覚える to memorize, learn (by heart)  
*oeru* 終える to finish  
*okureru* 遅れる to be late, be delayed  
*oshieru* 教える to teach, tell  
*tasukeru* 助ける to help  
*tazuneru* 尋ねる to ask, visit, call on  
*tomeru* 止める to stop, park  
*tsukareru* 疲れる to get tired  
*tsukeru* つける to turn on, light, attach  
*umareru* 生まれる to be born  
*wasureru* 忘れる to forget, leave (something) behind  
*yameru* やめる to quit, stop, retire

### Consonant-Stem Verbs

The dictionary form ends in *-ru*, *-u*, *ku*, *gu*, *su*, *tsu*, *nu*, *bu*, or *mu*. The second to last syllable may be any consonant + any vowel, or just a vowel.

### List of Common Consonant-Stem Verbs

*aru* ある to exist

296 • GRAMMATICAL EXPLANATIONS

- aruku* 歩く to walk  
*asobu* 遊ぶ to play, amuse oneself  
*au* 会う to meet, see (a person)  
*chigau* 違う to differ, be wrong  
*dasu* 出す to let out, take out, post, hand in, pay  
*furū* 降る to fall (of rain or snow)  
*ganbaru* がんばる to do one's best, hold on, try hard  
*hanasu* 話す to speak, talk, tell  
*harau* 払う to pay  
*hataraku* 働く to work  
*hiku* 引く to pull, draw, minus, reduce a price  
*iku* 行く to go  
*iū* 言う to say, tell  
*kaku* 書く to write  
*kasu* 貸す to lend  
*kau* 買う to buy  
*kesu* 消す to turn off, erase, extinguish  
*kiku* 聞く to hear, listen, ask  
*magaru* 曲がる to turn (a corner), curve, bend  
*ma ni au* 間に合う to be in time, catch (a train, bus, etc.)  
*matsu* 待つ to wait  
*morau* もらう to be given, receive  
*motsu* 持つ to hold, have, possess  
*naku* 泣く to cry, weep  
*nukunuru* なくなる to be gone, run out, pass away  
*nakusu* なくす to lose  
*narau* 習う to take lessons, learn  
*naru* なる to become  
*nomu* 飲む to drink, eat (soup), take (medicine)  
*noru* 乗る to ride, get on, board  
*odoroku* 驚く to be surprised  
*okonau* 行う to do, perform (an action)  
*oku* 置く to put, place  
*okuru* 送る to send, see off

*oru* おる to be, stay  
*osu* 押す to push, press  
*owaru* 終わる to be over, end  
*shimaru* 閉まる to be closed, be shut  
*shinu* 死ぬ to die  
*sumu* 住む to live, reside  
*suwaru* 座る to sit down, be seated  
*tatsu* 立つ to stand up, leave  
*tomaru* 止まる to come to a stop, run down  
*tomaru* 泊まる to stay (overnight)  
*toru* 取る to take, take off, remove  
*tsuzuku* 続く to continue, follow  
*tsukau* 使う to use, handle, spend (money)  
*tsuku* 着く to arrive, get to  
*tsukuru* 作る to make, cook, manufacture  
*utau* 歌う to sing  
*wakaru* わかる to understand, know, recognize  
*warau* 笑う to laugh, giggle, grin, chuckle  
*yaru* やる to do, give (informal)  
*yasumu* 休む to take a rest, be absent  
*yomu* 読む to read

## Irregular Verbs

*kuru* 来る to come  
*suru* する to do, perform various actions, be in some state

## Verb Forms

### 1. DICTIONARY FORM

This refers to the plain form found in the dictionary and always ends with *-u*

- This form is used at the end of a relative clause which modifies a noun placed directly after it, or in other types of subordinate clauses such as noun clauses. The *masu*-form cannot be used in such clauses. Also note that the use of the *masu* form to end

sentences in conversation is more polite

*Anata ga susumete kureru jisho o kaumasho.*

I'll buy the dictionary that you recommend to me

*Kare ga chugoku ni iku koto o shite imasu ka*

Do you know that he is going to China?

- This form is also used at the end of an appositive clause which precedes specific nouns, such as *yosu* (sign/look), *nozomi* (hope), *yakusoku* (promise/appointment), *jijitsu* (fact), etc

*Kare wa akirameru yosu ga nai*

He shows no sign of giving up.

*San ji ni tomodachi to au yakusoku ga aru n desu ga*

Sorry, I have an appointment to meet my friend at three

*Kare ga seiko suru nozomi wa nai*

There is no hope that he will succeed

- The dictionary form can also precede the following words and phrases, dealt with in Part I: *bakari*, *beki*, *bun*, *dake*, *desho*, *dokoro de (wa) nai*, *dokoro ka*, *hazu desu*, *hazu ga nai*, *ho hodo*, *ho ga u*, *hoka nai*, *igai*, *kagiri*, *kamoshirenai*, *kara kawari ni keredotmo*), *koto*, *koto ga aru*, *koto ga dekiru*, *koto ni naru*, *koto ni natte iru*, *koto ni shite iru*, *koto ni suru*, *kurai made*, *made ni mae*, *mutai* (2), *mono*, *na nara*, *ni chigai nai*, *ni mo kakawarazu*, *ni tsurete ni wa no*, *node no desu no ni*, *rashu shika*, *so desu* (1), *tabi ni tame ni*, *to toka*, *toki ni*, *tokoro*, *to shitemo*, *to sureba*, *tsuide ni*, *tsumori desu*, *tte uchi ni*, *wake*, *ya yo desu yo ni yo ni suru*, *yo ni utte yori*

## 2. NAI FORM

This form expresses plain negation.

- This form is made as follows:

**Consonant-stem verbs** Replace the final *-u* with *-a* and add *nai*. When the final *-u* is preceded by another single vowel, as in *iu* or *kau*, replace the *u* with *wa* and add *nai*.

*masu* to the conjunctive form of the verb

This form cannot be used in relative clauses. It is commonly used at the end of a sentence or certain subordinate clauses.

- *Masu* can be replaced with the following variations of *masu* to express the meanings on the right respectively

<i>masen</i>	Polite non past negative
<i>mashita</i>	Polite past affirmative
<i>masen deshita</i>	Polite past negative
<i>mashō</i>	Polite volitional

DICT	FORM	MASU-FORM	NON-PAST (NEG.)	PAST (AFF.)
			•	•
			PAST (NEG.)	VOLITIONAL
<i>miru</i>		<i>mimasu</i>	<i>mimasen</i>	<i>mimashita</i>
			<i>mimasen deshita</i>	<i>mimashō</i>
<i>deru</i>		<i>demasu</i>	<i>demasen</i>	<i>demashita</i>
			<i>demasen deshita</i>	<i>demashō</i>
<i>iku</i>		<i>ikimasu</i>	<i>ikimasen</i>	<i>ikimashita</i>
			<i>ikimasen deshita</i>	<i>ikimashō</i>
<i>suru</i>		<i>shimasu</i>	<i>shimasen</i>	<i>shimashita</i>
			<i>shimasen deshita</i>	<i>shimashō</i>
<i>kuru</i>		<i>kimasu</i>	<i>kimasen</i>	<i>kimashita</i>
			<i>kimasen deshita</i>	<i>kimashō</i>

- Used to express an invitation  
*Ashita wa eiga o mi ni ikimasen ka*  
 Would you like to go see a movie tomorrow?  
*Watashi no atarashii kuruma de doraibu ni ikimashō*  
 Let's go for a drive in my new car.
- Used to express habitual action  
*Sumimasen ga, watashi wa nama no tabemono wa zenzen tabemasen.*  
 I'm sorry, but I don't eat raw food at all.



## 302 • GRAMMATICAL EXPLANATIONS

- Used to express a suggestion  
*O-cha demo nomimashō ka.*  
Shall we have tea or something?
- Used to express present action  
*Kono natsu yasumi wa dokoka e ikimasu ka*  
Are you going anywhere during this summer vacation?
- Used to express past perfect action  
*Sono eiga wa mō mimashita*  
I've already seen that movie.
- Used to express volition  
*Watashi ga kawari ni sore o shimasho*  
I will do it in place of you.
- See also *masu* in Part I

## 5. TE FORM

This form expresses actions in succession, an unemphatical reason or cause, a process of action, contrastive actions, or a condition

- This form is made by adding *-te* to the conjunctive form. However, the *-te* of *te*-form becomes *-de* after the conjunctive form of a consonant stem verb whose dictionary form ends with *-bu*, *-gu*, *-mu*, or *-nu*. The last syllable of the conjunctive form of a consonant stem verb whose dictionary form ends with the following syllables is also euphonically changed before *-te* as follows. See also Euphonic Changes in Part II

*ku, -gu* → *-i-* (*-ite/-ide*)

*u, -tsu, -ru* → *-t-* (*-ite*)

*-bu, -mu, -nu* → *-n* (*-nde*)

DICT FORM	TE FORM
<i>asobu</i>	<i>asonde</i>
<i>iku*</i>	<i>itte</i>
<i>oyogu</i>	<i>oyoide</i>
<i>kaku</i>	<i>kaite</i>
<i>kuru</i>	<i>kite</i>
<i>shimaru</i>	<i>shimatte</i>
<i>shinu</i>	<i>shinde</i>
<i>suru</i>	<i>shite</i>
<i>taberu</i>	<i>tabete</i>
<i>nomu</i>	<i>nonde</i>
<i>matsu</i>	<i>matte</i>
<i>miru</i>	<i>mite</i>
<i>iru</i>	<i>itte</i>

(\**iku* is an exception)

- The *te*-form can precede the following words and phrases, dealt with in Part I. *ageru*, *aru*, *bakari*, *hoshu*, *irai*, *iru*, *itadaku*, *kara*, *kudavanai*, *kureru*, *mitai* (I), *morau*, *oru*, *sorekara*, *soshite*, *yoroshu*

See also *te hoshu*, *te iku*, *te kuru*, *te miru*, *te oku*, *temasu*, *te shimau*

- See also Euphonic Changes in Part II

## 6. TA-FORM

This form expresses past actions or events, completion of an action or movement, lasting state as the result of an action, or movement and experiences at some undefined time.

- This form is simply made by replacing *-te* of *te*-form with *-ta*

DICT FORM	TA-FORM
<i>iku</i>	<i>itta</i>

<i>kaku</i>	<i>kaita</i>
<i>kuru</i>	<i>kita</i>
<i>suru</i>	<i>shita</i>
<i>taberu</i>	<i>tabeta</i>
<i>miru</i>	<i>mita</i>
<i>iū</i>	<i>itta</i>

- This form is used in a relative clause which modifies a noun, or in other types of subordinate clauses. It can also end a sentence, but in conversation it is more polite to use *mashta*.

*Watashi wa kinō katta hon o mo yomimashita*

I've already read the book that I bought yesterday

- Like the dictionary form, this form can be used at the end of an appositive clause which precedes specific nouns, such as *yōsu* (sign/look), *jijitsu* (fact), etc.

*Kanojo wa yoku natta yōsu ga nai*

She shows no sign of having gotten better

*Kare ga misu o okashita jijitsu wa hitei dekinai*

The fact that he made a mistake cannot be denied

- The *ta*-form of several verbs may be used as an attributive adjectival which can be used to modify a noun immediately following it.

DICT. FORM	TA-FORM
<i>hanareru</i> (to stay away)	<i>hanareta</i> (distant)
<i>kawaru</i> (to differ)	<i>kawatta</i> (peculiar/unusual)
<i>komaru</i> (to have difficulty)	<i>komatta</i> (difficult/embarrassing)
<i>machigau</i> (to make an error)	<i>machigatta</i> (wrong/incorrect)
<i>megamareru</i> (to be blessed)	<i>megumareta</i> (blessed/comfortable)

- The *ta* form can precede the following words and phrases, dealt with in Part I: *ato de*, *bakari*, *bun*, *dake*, *dokoro ka*, *hazu desu*,

*hazu ga nai, ho, hodo, ho ga u, kamo shirenai kara, kawari ni, keredo(mo), koto, koto ga aru, mitai (2), mono, na, nara, ni chigai nai ni mo kakawarazu, no, nade, no desu, no ni, rashii, so desu (1), tame ni, toki ni, tokoro, tokoro ga, to shitemo, to sureba, tsuide ni, tsumori desu, tte, wake, yo desu, yori*

## 7. BA-FORM

This form expresses a non-past condition

- This form is made as follows:

*Iru-* and *eru-*verbs Replace the final *-ru* with *-re*, and add *ba*

Consonant stem verbs Replace the last vowel with *-e*, and add *ba*.

Irregular verbs *yuru* • *sureba*, *kuru* • *kureba*

DICT. FORM	BA FORM	NEG. CONDITIONAL
<i>iku</i>	<i>ikeba</i>	<i>ikanakereba</i>
<i>miru</i>	<i>moreba</i>	<i>minakereba</i>
<i>taberu</i>	<i>tabereba</i>	<i>tabenakereba</i>

- See also *ba*, *nara*, *tara*, *to* in Part I

## 8. TARA-FORM

This form is a conditional that means "if," "when," "after (doing)," and so forth. It implies the completion of an individual action.

- This form is made by adding *-tara* to the stem of the *te* form

Note that *tara*-form of the copula verb *da* is *dattara*

DICT. FORM	TARA-FORM	NEG. FORM
<i>iku</i>	<i>ittara</i>	<i>ikanakattara</i>
<i>miru</i>	<i>mitara</i>	<i>minakattara</i>
<i>taberu</i>	<i>tabetara</i>	<i>tabenakattara</i>

- See also *ba*, *nara*, *tara*, *to* in Part I

- See also *koto ga dekiru* in Part I

## 10. PASSIVE FORM

This form expresses the passive

- This form is made as follows:

**Consonant-stem verbs** Replace the final *-u* with *-areru*.  
When the final *u* is preceded by another vowel, as in *iru* or *kau*, replace it with *-wareru*

**Iru- and eru verbs** Replace the final *-ru* with *-rareru*

**Irregular verbs** *suru* → *sareru*, *kuru* → *korareru*

- Verbs in the passive form are dealt with as an *eru*-verbs. Refer to the explanation of *eru* verb conjugation in the entries above

DICT. FORM	PASSIVE (PLAIN)	PASSIVE (POLITE)	TE-FORM
<i>kowasu</i>	<i>kowasareru</i>	<i>kowasaremasu</i>	<i>kowasarete</i>
<i>nusumu</i>	<i>nusumareru</i>	<i>nusumaremasu</i>	<i>nusumarete</i>

- Usually transitive verbs that describe an action toward a direct object can be formed into the passive

*Densha no naka de saifu ga/o nusumaremashita*

My wallet was stolen (I had my wallet stolen) in the train

- In Japanese a few intransitive verbs that do not take an object, such as *kuru* or *furu*, can be formed into the passive to express an action that is inconvenient for the speaker. The agent of the passive verb may be indicated by *ni*

*Isogashii toki ni mata o-kyaku-san ni korareta.*

A visitor came again when I was busy

*Kaeru tochu de ame ni furaremashita.*

I was caught in the rain on my way home

- See also *ni*, *ni yotte* in Part I and honorific form below

## 11. HONORIFIC FORM

This form is used for showing the speaker's respect toward the subject of the verb.

- This form is made in the same manner as the passive form. Therefore, whether the form is passive or honorific must be determined from the context. A verb in the honorific form is dealt with as an *eru*-verb.  
*Anata mo ikaremasu ka.*  
 Will you go, too?  
*Sensei wa kyō wa koraremasen.*  
 The teacher isn't coming today.

- See also Polite Language in Part II

## 12. COMMAND FORM

This form expresses a strong, emphatic command. Its use in conversation is not advised unless the speaker wants to sound abrupt. It is used when a superior orders something to be done, or when spectators cheer a team.

- This form is made as follows.  
 Consonant-stem verbs: Replace the final *u* with *e*.  
*Iru* and *eru* verbs: Replace the final *ru* with *-ro*.  
 Irregular verbs: *suru* → *shiro*, *kuru* → *ko*.
- The negative command form is the dictionary form + *na*.
- The sentence-ending particle *yo* may be added, especially when speaking to a friend, in order to soften the command.  
*Chanto shiro yo.*  
 Do it right, okay?
- See also *ka*, *kudasai*, *kureru*, *masen*, *morau*, *nasai* in Part I

## 13. PRESUMPTIVE FORM

This form expresses the speaker's uncertainty concerning future, present, or past actions, events, or states

- This form is expressed by adding *deshō*, *mutai rashu*, *so desu* or *yo desu* to the dictionary form of verbs.

- See also *desho*, *mutai*, *rashu*, *so desu*, *yo desu* in Part I

## 14. VOLITIONAL FORM

This form expresses the speaker's volition in making a suggestion, similar to the English expression "I will/let's."

- This form is made as follows:

Consonant-stem verbs: Replace the final *-u* with *-o*

*Iru-* and *eru-*verbs: Replace the final *-ru* with *-o*

Irregular verbs: *suru* → *shuyo*, *kuru* → *koyo*

DICTIONARY FORM	PLAIN VOLITIONAL	POLITE VOLITIONAL
<i>iku</i>	<i>ikō</i>	<i>ikumashō</i>
<i>iru</i>	<i>iyō</i>	<i>imashō</i>
<i>miru</i>	<i>miyō</i>	<i>mimashō</i>
<i>oku</i>	<i>okō</i>	<i>okimashō</i>
<i>yameru</i>	<i>yameyō</i>	<i>yamemashō</i>

- This form can be used to express invitations, offers, or suggestions. However, as it is used rather informally, it is better to use *masho* (the volitional form of *masu*) in polite speech

*Eiga o mi ni ikō yo.*

Let's go and see a movie.

*Kurā o tsukemashō ka.*

Shall I turn on the air conditioner?

*Koko de kaishō o shimashō ka.*

Let's do our shopping here, shall we?

## 310 • GRAMMATICAL EXPLANATIONS

- The negative of this form is as follows

*Nai* form + *de* + *yo/imasho* Let's keep ourselves from (doing).

*Nai*-form + *de* + *oko/okimasho* Let's leave as it is unperformed

Dictionary form + *no o* + *yameyō/yamemasho* Let's give up (doing).

*Amari nomanai de okimashō.*

Let's not drink too much

*Ame na node dorashu ni iku no o yameyō.*

Let's not go for a drive because it is rainy

- See also *masu*-form in Part II

## 15. CAUSATIVE FORM

This form expresses the idea that the subject person makes or permits somebody or something to perform an action. In Japanese inanimate things are rarely used for the subject of the verb in the causative form. A verb in the causative form is dealt with as an *eru*-verb.

- This form is made as follows

Consonant-stem verbs Replace the final *-u* with *-a*, and add *-seru*. When the final *u* is preceded by a vowel, as in *iu* or *kau*, replace it with *-wa* and add *-seru*.

*Iru-* and *eru*-verbs Replace the final *-ru* with *-saseru*

Irregular verbs: *suru* → *saseru*, *kuru* → *kosaseru*

DICT. FORM	CAUSATIVE (PLAIN)	CAUSATIVE NAI-FORM	CAUSATIVE TA-FORM
<i>iku</i>	<i>ikaseru</i>	<i>ikasenai</i>	<i>ikaseta</i>
<i>tsukau</i>	<i>tsukawaseru</i>	<i>tsukawasenai</i>	<i>tsukawaseta</i>
<i>miru</i>	<i>misaseru</i>	<i>misasenai</i>	<i>misaseta</i>
<i>nomu</i>	<i>nomaseru</i>	<i>nomasenai</i>	<i>nomaseta</i>



*neru*                      *nesaseru*                      *nesasendai*                      *nesasete*  
 (*miseru* [to show-let see] is widely used instead of *misaseru*)

- Some verbs may be changed into causative form by the following rules and conjugate as consonant-stem verbs. These verbs then become transitive verbs and must take an object (either stated or implied).

**Consonant-stem verbs:** Replace the final *-u* with *-asu*. When the final syllable is *u*, as in *iru* or *kau*, replace it with *-wasu*.

**Iru- and eru-verbs:** Replace the final *-ru* with *-yasu*.

**Irregular verbs:** *yuru* → *sasu*, *kuru* → *kosasu*.

DICT. FORM	CAUSATIVE (PLAIN)	CAUSATIVE NAI-FORM	CAUSATIVE TA-FORM
<i>hataraku</i>	<i>hatarukasu</i>	<i>hatarakasanai</i>	<i>hatarukashita</i>
<i>naku</i>	<i>nakasu</i>	<i>nakasanai</i>	<i>nakashita</i>
<i>hashiru</i>	<i>hashirasu</i>	<i>hashirasanai</i>	<i>hashirushita</i>
<i>ugoku</i>	<i>ugokasu</i>	<i>ugokasanai</i>	<i>ugokashita</i>
<i>tobu</i>	<i>tobasu</i>	<i>tobasanai</i>	<i>tobashita</i>
<i>kawaku</i>	<i>kawakasu</i>	<i>kawakasanai</i>	<i>kawakashita</i>

*Kuruma o sukoshi mae e ugokashite kudasai.*  
 Please move your car a little forward.

- Use of *ni* with the causative

The person or thing which is made or let to perform an action is followed by *ni* or *o*. *Ni* is used to indicate the person made to do something when the verb takes a direct object with *o*, or when the person is permitted to do something.

*Kodomo ni motto yasai o tabesasete hô ga ii.*

It is better to make children eat more vegetables.

*Watashi ni soko e ikasete kudasai.*

Please let me go there.

*Watashi no buka ni tori ni ikaseru*

I'll have my assistant go and get it

- Use of *o* with the causative

This is used when the person or thing is made to do something (with transitive verb), the person is made to have some emotion, or the person is permitted to do something on the subject person's own responsibility (transitive or intransitive verb)

*Hayaku kodomo o nekaseta ho ga ii*

It's better to make the child go to bed early

*Joset o nakasete wa ikenai*

You should not make a lady cry

*Kodomo tachi o suki-na yo ni asobaseta.*

I let the children to play as they pleased

- *Ageru* and *kureru* may be used after *te*-form of the causative in order to express permission in a declarative sentence, or a request in a question.

*Anata ni watashi no suki-na uta o kikasete agemasu.*

I will let you listen to my favorite songs

*Chotto kopu o tsukawasete kuremasen ka.*

Will you let me use the copy machine for a while?

## 16. CAUSATIVE PASSIVE FORM

This form means "to be made to (do)" or "be permitted to (do)"

- This form is made as follows:

**Consonant stem verbs:** Replace the final *u* with *u* and add *sareru* or *serareru*. When the last syllable is *u* as in *iru* or *kau*, replace it with *-wa* and add *sareru* or *serareru*.

**Iru and eru verbs:** Replace the final *ru* with *saserareru*.

**Irregular verbs:** *suru* → *saserareru* *kuru* → *kosaserareru*

- *Serareru/saserareru* is made by combining the causative ending *-seru/-saseru* with the passive ending *-rareru*. *Sareru* is the abbreviated form of *serareru*. (The former is more commonly used than the latter.)
- A verb in the causative passive form conjugates as an *eru* verb.

## DICT. FORM

*iku**kau**shinjiru**akirameru*

## CAUSATIVE PASSIVE FORM

*ikasareru/ikaserareru**kawasareru/kawaserareru**shinjisaserareru**akiramesaserareru*

*Watashi wa tokidoki nichiyōbi mo hatarakasaremasu.*

I am made to work even on Sundays at times

*Takai mono o kawasarete komatte imasu.*

I am distressed because I was forced to buy something expensive

Other Japanese Language Books  
from TUTTLE PUBLISHING

**The Japanese Language**

*by Haruhiko Kondoh *et al.* translated by Umeo Hirano*

The richness and complexity of the Japanese language is revealed through its origins, dialects and jargon

ISBN 0 8048 1579 8 £59.95

**Read Japanese Today** *by Len Walsh*

This concise book teaches you to read 300 basic characters through their pictorial representation

ISBN 0 8048 1496 £510.95

**Basic Japanese Grammar** *by Everett F. Bleiler*

Includes index, glossary defining English grammatical terms and appendices of pronunciation

ISBN 0 8048 0106 6 £58.95

**Let's Study Japanese** *by Jun Muroda*

Covers many phrases used in day-to-day situations

ISBN 0 8048 0362 5 £56.95

**A Guide to Reading and Writing Japanese**

*edited by Florence Sakade*

A useful guide to the basics of the Japanese language

ISBN 0 8048 0226 2 £516.95

**Introduction to Written Japanese: Hiragana** *by Jim Gleeson*

Lively illustrations make this ideal for young learners

ISBN 0 8048 2075 9 £57.95

**Introduction to Written Japanese: Katakana** *by Jim Gleeson*

Perfect for beginners and young learners

ISBN 0 8048 2076 7 £57.95

**Kanji Power: A Workbook for Mastering Japanese Characters**

*by John Millen*

Learn how to read, write and use 240 of the most commonly used characters.

ISBN 0 8048 1725 1 £514.95

**A Guide to Remembering Japanese Characters**

*by Kenneth G. Henshell*

Master mnemonic aids for all 1,945 joyo kanji.

ISBN 0 8048 2038 4 US\$29.95

**A Guide to Learning Hiragana & Katakana**

*by Kenneth G. Henshell & Tetsuo Takagaki*

Teaches hiragana and katakana with space allotted for practice.

ISBN 0 8048 1663 8 US\$14.95

**250 Essential Kanji for Everyday Use Volume 1**

*by Kanji Text Research Group, University of Tokyo*

Learn 250 kanji frequently used in everyday situations.

ISBN 0 8048 1911 4 US\$19.95

**250 Essential Kanji for Everyday Use Volume 2**

*by Kanji Text Research Group, University of Tokyo*

An additional 250 kanji common in everyday situations.

ISBN 0 8048 2102 X US\$19.95

**Kanji and Kana (rev edition)** *by Wolfgang Hadamitzky & Mark Spahn*

Provides all the information needed for mastery of the basic characters (kanji) and the syllabaries (kana).

ISBN 0 8048 2077 5 US\$19.95

**A Guide to Writing Kanji & Kana Book 1, Book 2**

*by Kanji Text Research Group, University of Tokyo*

These books show how to write all 1,945 joyo kanji.

ISBN 0 8048 1685 9 (Book 1)/ISBN 0 8048 1686 7 (Book 2) US\$24.95 each

**A Handbook of Japanese Usage** *by Francis G. Drohan*

The essential complete guide to Japanese usage. Everyone who has a serious interest in Japanese should keep this book within easy reach.

ISBN 0 8048 1610 7 US\$16.95

**Write Your Name in Kanji** *by Nobuo Sato*

The first book to offer a fun and simple way to write your first name using Japanese characters, adding a bit of the mystery of the Orient to English names.

ISBN 0 8048 3334 6 US\$9.95

**Survival Japanese: How to Communicate Without Fuss or Fear – Instantly!**

*by Boye De Mente*

The unique phonetic system makes communication easy from your first day in Japan.

ISBN 0 8048 1681 6 US\$6.95

**Japanese for Fun** *by Taeko Kamiya*

Learn how to start a simple conversation in Japanese.

ISBN 0 8048 1628 X US\$6.95

**Instant Japanese: Everything You Need in 100 Key Words**

*by Boye De Mente*

Get what you need and go where you want, using essential words.

ISBN 4 900737 07 0 US\$6.95

**On the Move in Japan: Useful Phrases and Common Sense for the Traveler**

*by Scott Rutherford*

English words and phrases are given in romanised Japanese as well as Japanese script.

ISBN 4 900737 14 3 US\$8.95

**Japanese Made Easy** *by Tazuko Ajiro Monane*

A simple guide to the basic patterns of the Japanese language and to the occasions when they will be most useful to the foreigner in Japan.

ISBN 0 8048 1219 5 US\$12.95

**All Romanized English-Japanese Dictionary**

*by Hyojun Romaji Kai*

This concise dictionary with romanised definitions is perfect for foreigners living in Japan and for Japanese students of English.

ISBN 0 8048 1118 0 US\$12.95

**Martin's Pocket Dictionary: English-Japanese, Japanese-English (romanised)** *by Samuel E. Martin*

Helps students of Japanese understand what they hear, and express themselves correctly. With over 14,000 entries, it is a must for the would-be Japanese conversationalist.

ISBN 0 8048 1588 7 US\$12.95



**Martin's Concise Japanese Dictionary:** Fully romanised with Complete Kanji & Kana *by Samuel E. Martin*

An up-to-date, compact dictionary, containing more than 18,000 entries. For each entry, the English translation, romanised Japanese spelling, and the kanji and kana form of the words are provided.

ISBN 0 8048 1912 2 US\$18.95

**The Compact Nelson Japanese-English Character Dictionary**  
*revised by John H. Haig and the Department of East Asian Languages and Literatures, University of Hawaii at Manoa*

With the time-saving Universal Radical Index, it is perfect for students and business people.

ISBN 0 8048 2037 6 US\$27.95

**The New Nelson Japanese-English Character Dictionary**  
*completely revised by John H. Haig and the Department of East Asian Languages and Literatures, University of Hawaii at Manoa*

The first major revision of Andrew N. Nelson's seminal work, this dictionary has been expanded and updated to keep pace with new technical terminology.

ISBN 0 8048 2036 8 US\$49.95

**Basic Japanese Conversation Dictionary** *by Samuel E. Martin*

Provides the key to a large portion of the colloquial language, with over 6,000 commonly used Japanese and English words.

ISBN 0 8048 0057 X US\$6.95

**Easy Japanese:** A Direct Approach to Immediate Conversation  
*by Samuel E. Martin*

Includes 30 easy lessons, a list of 3,000 Japanese words, and writing charts.

ISBN 0 8048 0157 6 US\$9.95

**The Learner's Kanji Dictionary**  
*by Mark Spahn & Wolfgang Hadamitzky*

This dictionary has been created specially for students of the Japanese language.

ISBN 0 8048 2095 3 US\$34.95

**The Kanji Dictionary** *by Mark Spahn & Wolfgang Hadamitzky*

The only dictionary of its kind to employ a comprehensive compound index, making the written Japanese language more accessible.

ISBN 0 8048 2058 9 US\$59.95

**Business Kanji** *by Reiko Suzuki, Ase Hajikano, Sayuri Kataoka*

Ideal for students of the Japanese language with a special interest in business, finance and economics, it provides over 1,700 essential business terms in Japanese.

ISBN 0 8048 2134 8 US\$22.95

**Pocket Japanese Dictionary** *by Yuki Shimada*

Covers all the words needed for everyday situations encountered by travelers. Includes a brief guide to pronunciation.

ISBN 0 7946 0048 4 US\$5.95